Optima3600

User's Guide

StoreWay Optima



REFERENCE 86 A1 33FH 01

StoreWay Optima

Optima3600 User's Guide

Hardware

December 2011

BULL CEDOC 357 AVENUE PATTON B.P.20845 49008 ANGERS CEDEX 01 FRANCE

REFERENCE 86 A1 33FH 01 The following copyright notice protects this book under Copyright laws which prohibit such actions as, but not limited to, copying, distributing, modifying, and making derivative works.

Copyright © Bull SAS 2011

Printed in France

Trademarks and Acknowledgements

We acknowledge the rights of the proprietors of the trademarks mentioned in this manual.

All brand names and software and hardware product names are subject to trademark and/or patent protection.

Quoting of brand and product names is for information purposes only and does not represent trademark misuse.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Bull will not be liable for errors contained herein, or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the use of this material.

Contents

Introduction	xvii
About This Document	xxi
Conventions in This Document	xxi
Document Organization	xxii
About Other Documents	xxiv
About Warning Labels	xxv
Disk Array Controller	xxvi
Controller (CONT)	xxviii
HPE, DPE	xxix
Power Supply	XXX
Battery	XXXI
Fan	XXXII
DISK Enclosure	XXXIII XXXIII
Disposal of the Unit	XXXV
CHAPTER 1 10verview	1
1.1 Features	2
1.1.1 High Performance and Large Capacity	2
1.1.2 High Reliability and High Availability	2
1.1.3 Operation Management	2
1.2 Components	3
1.2.1 Disk Array Controller	3
1.2.2 Disk Enclosure	
1.2.3 LED Display	
1.3 Basic Operation	
1.3.2 Powering Off the Disk Array System	
CHAPTER 2 Workflow - Installation to Operation	43
CHAPTER 3 Installing the Disk Array System	47
3.1 Preparation	48
3.2 Installation	
3.2.1 Mounting a Disk Array Unit on a Rack	
3.2.2 Mounting a Disk Enclosure on a Rack	
3.2.3 Installing Disk Drives	
3.3 Connection	62
3.3.1 Overview	62
3.3.2 Connecting a Disk Enclosure	63
3.3.3 Connecting an Application Server	63
3.3.4 Connecting LAN Cables	64
3.3.5 Connecting Power Supply Cables	65
CHAPTER 4 Storage Manager	67
4.1 How Storage Manager is provided	68
4.1.1 How Storage Manager is Provided and Its Configuration	68

4.1.2 The Operating Environment of Storage Manager Client 4.2 Before Starting Storage Manager Client	70 73
4.3 Setup	81
4.3.1 Installing Network Setting Tool	81
4.3.2 Configuring IP Addresses by Using Network Setting Tool	
4.3.3 Setting a Time Zone of the Disk Array	
4.4 Installing Storage Manager Agent Ounty on Application Server	101
4.5 1 Before Starting Storage Manager Client	102
4.5.2 Starting Storage Manager Client	
CHAPTER 5 Initializing a Disk Array (FC)	107
5.1 Overview	
5.2 Collecting Host Information From Application Servers	
5.2.1 Collecting Host Information From Application Server	110
5.3 Initialization by Storage Manager	111
5.3.1 Initialization Wizard	
5.3.2 Binding a Pool	
5.3.3 Binding a Hot Spare	128
5.3.5 Collecting Host Information	
5.3.6 Assigning Logical Disks	
5.4 Checking Connection from Application Servers	146
CHAPTER 6 Initializing a Disk Array (iSCSI)	147
6.1 Overview	
6.2 Initialization by Storage Manager	
6.2.1 Initialization Wizard	149
6.2.2 iSCSI Setup Tool	164
6.2.3 Binding a Pool	
6.2.4 Binding a Hot Spare	
6.2.5 Binding Logical Disk	
CHAPTER 7 Installing Optional Parts	
7.1 Optional Parts	
7.2 Preparation	
7.3 Installation and Removal	
7.3.1 Front Bezel	
7.3.2 Host Folt Extension (HFE)	
7.3.4 Disk Enclosures	
7.3.5 Batteries (BBU)	
7.3.6 Cache Modules	199
CHAPTER 8 Changes to the Configuration	201
8.1 Modifying the Settings by Using DIP Switches	202
8.2 Modifying the Configuration by Storage Manager (FC)	203
8.2.1 Binding Additional Logical Disks (FC)	203
8.2.2 Adding Application Servers.	
8.2.3 Using the Initialization Wizard to Modify the Configuration	
o.2.4 ivioaitying the Disk Array Contiguration	205

8.3 Modifying the Configuration by Storage Manager (iSCSI)	
8.3.1 Binding Additional Logical Disks (ISCSI)	
8.3.2 Using the Initialization Wizard to Modify the Configuration	
8.3.3 Modifying the Disk Array Configuration	
CHAPTER 9 Troubleshooting	209
9.1 Troubleshooting According to Device Conditions	210
9.2 Network Setting Tool Errors	217
9.3 Storage Manager Errors	218
9.3.1 Errors Experienced Throughout Storage Manager Usage	218
9.3.2 Errors in Initialization	222
9.3.3 Errors in Pool Binding	
9.3.4 Errors in Hot Spare Binding	224
9.3.5 Errors in Logical Disk Binding	224
9.3.6 Errors in Retrieving Host Information	225
9.3.7 Assigning Logical Disk Errors	225
9.4 iSCSI Setup Tool Errors	226
9.4.1 iSCSI Setup Tool (Windows) Errors	226
9.4.2 iSCSI Setup Tool (Linux) Errors	227
9.4.3 iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes	229
9.5 StoreWay Multipath (Windows) Errors	232
9.6 Changing Network Settings for Monitoring Disk Arrays from Storage Manager	234
9.7 Troubleshooting at Installation	235
9.7.1 The IP Address of the iSCSI Port cannot be set on	
the Storage Manager Initialization Wizard	235
9.7.2 The logical disks of the disk array cannot be recognized by the host,	
or an error message is displayed	235
9.8 User Support	239
9.8.1 Unit Life Span and Maintenance Period	239
9.8.2 Before You Call	239
9.8.3 Contacts for questions and consultation	
APPENDIX A Specifications	243
APPENDIX B How to Set/Check Application Server (Windows) (FC)	245
B.1 Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility	245
B.1.1 Before Installation	245
B.1.2 Installation	247
B.2 Collecting/Registering Host Information on Application Server	249
B.2.1 Collecting Host Information by Using File Output	249
B.2.2 Registering Host Information by Using File Output	250
B.3 Checking Connection from Application Server	253
B.3.1 Check connection under a Windows environment	253
B.3.2 Check the Multipath Settings and Status	
APPENDIX C How to Set/Check Application Server (Windows) (iSCSI)	259
C.1 Initializing Application Server	259
C.1.1 Preparation	
C.1.2 Installing iSCSI Software Initiator	
C.1.3 Installing StoreWay Multipath	
C.1.4 Setting up iSCSI Software Initiator	
C.2 iSCSI Setup Tool	276
C.3 Checking Connection from Application Server	279

C.3.1 Logon Steps in Windows Environments	
C.3.2 Confirmation Steps in Windows Environments	
APPENDIX D How to Set/Check Application Server (Linux) (FC)	293
D.1 Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility	
D.1.1 Before Installation	
D.1.2 Installation	
D.2 Collecting Host Information by Using File Output	295
D.2.2 Registering Host Information by Using File Output	
D.3 Checking Connection from Application Server	
D.3.1 Confirmation Steps in Linux environment	
APPENDIX E How to Set/Check Application Server (Linux) (iSCSI)	
E 1 Initializing Application Server	303
E 1 1 Preparation	304
E.1.2 Installing iSCSI Software Initiator	
E.1.3 Installing StoreWay Multipath	
E.1.4 Setting up iSCSI Software Initiator	
E.2 iSCSI Setup Tool	312
E.3 Checking Connection from Application Server	
E.3.1 Logon Steps in Linux Environment.	
E.3.2 Commutation steps in Linux Environment	
APPENDIX F How to Set/Check Application Server (VMware) (iSCSI)	321
F.1 Initializing Application Server	321
F.1.1 Preparation	
F.1.2 Creating VMKernel Port.	
F.1.3 Setting up Software (SCSI Initiator	
F.2 Checking Connection from Application Server	
F 2 2 Setting up a Data Store	337
F.2.3 Confirmation Using Guest OS	
APPENDIX G Installing StoreWay Multipath	
C 1 For Windows Application Server	2/1
ADDENDIX II Notes Using Misses of Objector Ospice in Windows Ospice 2000 Environment	
APPENDIX H Notes-Using Microsoft Cluster Service in Windows Server 2003 Environment	
H.1 Target ID	
APPENDIX I LED Inspection Checksheet	
I.1 Disk Array Controller	351
APPENDIX J Notes-Using iSCSI Supported Disk Array Unit	
APPENDIX K iSCSI Connection Configuration-Examples	
K.1 Connection Between Application Server and LAN	
K.2 Connection Between Management Server and LAN	
APPENDIX L Script for Reporting Information Registered with iSNS Server	

APPENDIX M Retrieve Initiator Information on Application Servers Registered with iSNS Server	[.] 363
APPENDIX N CHAP Authentication	367
N.1 General	367
N.2 Constraints on Secrets	
N.3 Description of Operation Modes	367
N.4 CHAP Username Setting	
N.5 Correspondence between Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator Secret Setting and iSMCLI	368
Glossary	371
Index	381

List of Figures

Figure 1:	Example of Recommended Configuration	xviii
Figure 1-1:	Disk Array Configuration (Perspective View)	3
Figure 1-2:	Front View (Without Front Bezel)	4
Figure 1-3:	Front View (With Front Bezel)	4
Figure 1-4:	Configuration Example (Two FC 4-Port HPEs Installed)	5
Figure 1-5:	Controller Installed with BBUs and Fans	7
Figure 1-6:	BBU	8
Figure 1-7:	Fan	8
Figure 1-8:	Perspective View of Power Supply	9
Figure 1-9:	Front View of Power Supply	9
Figure 1-10:	Perspective View of Management Card	
Figure 1-11:	Front View of Management Card	
Figure 1-12:	Perspective View of FC-HPE	11
Figure 1-13:	Front View of FC-HPE	11
Figure 1-14:	Perspective View of 1G-iSCSI-HPE	12
Figure 1-15:	Front View of 1G-iSCSI-HPE	
Figure 1-16:	Perspective View of 10G-iSCSI-HPE	13
Figure 1-17:	Front View of 10G-iSCSI-HPE	13
Figure 1-18:	Perspective View of SAS-HPE	14
Figure 1-19:	Front View of SAS-HPE	14
Figure 1-20:	Perspective View of DPE	15
Figure 1-21:	Front View of DPE	15
Figure 1-22:	2.5 Inch Disk Drive Model	
Figure 1-23:	3.5 Inch Disk Drive Model	
Figure 1-24:	Front Bezel (Option)	16
Figure 1-25:	Disk Drive Front View	17
Figure 1-26:	Disk Enclosure Rear View (with AC Power Supplies)	
Figure 1-27:	Power Supply	19
Figure 1-28:	Adapter	20
Figure 1-29:	Disk Array Controller: Front View	21
Figure 1-30:	Disk Array Controller: PS (Power Supply)	24
Figure 1-31:	Disk Array Controller: MNG	25
Figure 1-32:	Disk Array Controller: FC-HPE	26
Figure 1-33:	Disk Array Controller: 1G-iSCSI-HPE	
Figure 1-34:	Disk Array Controller: 10G-iSCSI-HPE	27
Figure 1-35:	Disk Array Controller: SAS-HPE	
Figure 1-36:	Disk Array Controller: DPE	
Figure 1-37:	LED Display - Disk Array Unit, Disk Enclosure, and Disk Drives	29
Figure 1-38:	LED Display - Disk Array Controller Power and Disk Enclosure Power	31
Figure 1-39:	LED Display - Disk Array Enclosure Adapter	32
Figure 1-40:	AC Power Off Sequence (FC Port Connection)	
Figure 3-1:	Flow of Preliminary Setups	49
Figure 3-2:	Rack Mount Kit	51
Figure 3-3:	Rail	52

Figure 3-4:	Attaching Rail to Rear Pole	52
Figure 3-5:	Screwing Rail on Front Pole	53
Figure 3-6:	Attaching Rail to Rear Pole	53
Figure 3-7:	Attaching Inner Rail	54
Figure 3-8:	Attaching Ear Bezels or Front Bezel Clips	55
Figure 3-9:	Securing Unit 1	56
Figure 3-10:	Securing Unit 2	57
Figure 3-11:	Attaching Location Label	59
Figure 3-12:	Removing Dummy Carrier	60
Figure 3-13:	Disk Drive	60
Figure 3-14:	Inserting Disk Drive	61
Figure 3-15:	Connection Example	63
Figure 3-16:	Example of LAN Cable Connection	64
Figure 3-17:	AC Cable	66
Figure 4-1:	Example of Recommended Configuration	69
Figure 4-2:	Internet Options Window	74
Figure 4-3:	Trusted Sites Window	75
Figure 4-4:	Internet Options Window	76
Figure 4-5:	Security Settings Window	77
Figure 4-6:	Update Tab of Java Control Panel	78
Figure 4-7:	Advanced Tab of Control Panel	80
Figure 4-8:	Start Page of Setup	82
Figure 4-9:	Select Installation Method	83
Figure 4-10:	Confirm Software	84
Figure 4-11:	License Agreement	85
Figure 4-12:	Choose Destination Location	86
Figure 4-13:	Starting Network Setting Tool	87
Figure 4-14:	Connect Disk Array - Example	90
Figure 4-15:	Select a Disk Array - Start up	91
Figure 4-16:	Select a Disk Array	92
Figure 4-17:	Network Settings	93
Figure 4-18:	Network Setting Tool - Confirmation Dialog Box	94
Figure 4-19:	Select Disk Array Type	95
Figure 4-20:	Select Installation Method	96
Figure 4-21:	Setting in a Time Zone	97
Figure 4-22:	Setting in a Time Zone - Select Time Zone	98
Figure 4-23:	Setup Completion	99
Figure 4-24:	Log On Screen	103
Figure 4-25:	Log On Screen (Expanded)	104
Figure 4-26:	Main Screen	105
Figure 5-1:	Configuration - Auto-Collection of Host Information	109
Figure 5-2:	Configuration - Collect Host Information Using Host Information Collection Command	110
Figure 5-3:	Starting Initialization Wizard	111
Figure 5-4:	Welcome to Initialization Wizard	112
Figure 5-5:	Setting Disk Array Subsystem Name	113
Figure 5-6:	Set Time	115
•		

Figure 5-7:	Set Time - Setting NTP Server	
Figure 5-8:	Unlocking License	
Figure 5-9:	Host Port Connection Parameters (FC)	
Figure 5-10:	Edit Dialog	
Figure 5-11:	Port Mode Switching Screen	120
Figure 5-12:	Finish Initialization Wizard	122
Figure 5-13:	Pool Bind	123
Figure 5-14:	Pool Bind - Confirmation	
Figure 5-15:	Pool Bind - Completion	127
Figure 5-16:	Hot Spare Bind - List Display	. 128
Figure 5-17:	Hot Spare Bind - View Display	129
Figure 5-18:	Hot Spare Bind - Completion	. 131
Figure 5-19:	Logical Disk Bind	
Figure 5-20:	Logical Disk Bind - Confirmation	134
Figure 5-21:	Logical Disk Bind - Completion	136
Figure 5-22:	Host Information Collection - Setting Method	. 137
Figure 5-23:	Host Information Collection - Registration	139
Figure 5-24:	Host Information Collection - Completion	
Figure 5-25:	Assignment of Logical Disk	
Figure 5-26:	Assignment of Logical Disk - Confirm	
Figure 5-27:	Assignment of Logical Disk - Finish	
Figure 6-1:	Starting Initialization Wizard	150
Figure 6-2:	Welcome to Initialization Wizard	151
Figure 6-3:	Set Disk Array Subsystem Name	152
Figure 6-4:	Set Time	154
Figure 6-5:	Set Time - Setting NTP Server	156
Figure 6-6:	Unlock License	157
Figure 6-7:	Host Connection Port Parameters (iSCSI)	. 159
Figure 6-8:	Host Connection Port Parameters (iSCSI) - Setting	160
Figure 6-9:	Set iSNS Server	161
Figure 6-10:	Finish Initialization Wizard	. 163
Figure 6-11:	Status - Storage Manager Server	164
Figure 6-12:	Pool Bind	. 166
Figure 6-13:	Pool Bind - Confirmation	. 168
Figure 6-14:	Pool Bind - Completion.	170
Figure 6-15:	Hot Spare Bind - List Display	171
Figure 6-16:	Hot Spare Bind - View Display	172
Figure 6-17:	Hot Spare Bind - Completion	174
Figure 6-18:	Logical Disk Bind	175
Figure 6-19:	Logical Disk Bind - Confirmation	177
Figure 6-20:	Logical Disk Bind - Completion	179
Figure 6-21:	Assignment of Logical Disk	. 180
Figure 6-22:	Assignment of Logical Disk - Confirm	. 182
Figure 6-23:	Assignment of Logical Disk - Finish	. 183
Figure 7-1:	Key of the Front Bezel	. 191
Figure 7-2:	Inserting the Front Bezel (1)	. 192

Figure 7-3:	Inserting the Front Bezel (2)	.192
Figure 7-4:	Removing the Front Bezel	.193
Figure 7-5:	Removing the Disk Drive	.194
Figure 7-6:	SAS Cable Connection	.195
Figure 7-7:	Cables and Connectors	.196
Figure 7-8:	SAS Cable Connections and DE/PD Numbers	. 197
Figure 8-1:	DIP Switch	.202
Figure 8-2:	Binding a Logical Disk (FC)	.203
Figure 8-3:	Logical Disk Bind (FC)	.204
Figure 8-4:	Message Asking Whether to Stop Monitoring	.205
Figure 8-5:	Binding a Logical Disk (iSCSI)	.206
Figure 8-6:	Message Asking Whether to Stop Monitoring	.207
Figure B-1:	Getting Started - Host Information Collection	.250
Figure B-2:	Host Information Collection - Setting Method	.251
Figure B-3:	Host Information Collection - Registration	.252
Figure B-4:	Host Information Collection - Completion	.253
Figure B-5:	Computer Management - Device Manager	.255
Figure B-6:	Computer Management - Disk Management	.256
Figure C-1:	Unit with NF53x1-xFxx (10Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)	.261
Figure C-2:	Unit with NF53x1-xFxx (1Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)	.261
Figure C-3:	Configuration Example	.262
Figure C-4:	Microsoft iSCSI (1) Dialog Box	.262
Figure C-5:	Microsoft iSCSI (2) Screen	.263
Figure C-6:	Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (1)	.263
Figure C-7:	Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (2)	.264
Figure C-8:	Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (3)	.265
Figure C-9:	Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (4)	.266
Figure C-10:	Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (5)	.267
Figure C-11:	Application Server Desktop Screen	.267
Figure C-12:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (General Tab) Screen	.268
Figure C-13:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (General Tab) Screen	.269
Figure C-14:	CHAP Secret Input Window	.269
Figure C-15:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen	.271
Figure C-16:	Add Target Portal Screen	.271
Figure C-17:	Authentication Error Screen	.272
Figure C-18:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen	.272
Figure C-19:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen	.273
Figure C-20:	iSNS Server Add Screen	.273
Figure C-21:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen	.274
Figure C-22:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (General Tab) Screen	.275
Figure C-23:	iSCSI Setup Tool - Log on to the Target	.277
Figure C-24:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Targets Tab) Screen	.280
Figure C-25:	Log On to Target Screen	.281
Figure C-26:	Advanced Setting (General Tab) Screen	.282
Figure C-27:	Log On to Target Screen	.283
Figure C-28:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Targets Tab) Screen	.285

Figure C-29:	Log On to Target Screen	286
Figure C-30:	Advanced Setting (General Tab) Screen	287
Figure C-31:	Log On to Target Screen	288
Figure C-32:	iSCSI Initiator Properties (Target Tab) Screen	289
Figure C-33:	Device Manager	290
Figure C-34:	Disk Management	291
Figure D-1:	Getting Started - Host Information	296
Figure D-2:	Set Host Information - Select How to Set	297
Figure D-3:	Set Host Information - Specifying Host Information File	298
Figure D-4:	Host Information Collection - Completion	299
Figure E-1:	Unit with NF53x1-xF21xx (10Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)	305
Figure E-2:	Unit with NF53x1-xF11xx (1Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)	305
Figure E-3:	Configuration Example	306
Figure F-1:	Unit with NF53x1-xF21xx (10Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)	323
Figure F-2:	Unit with NF53x1-xF11xx (1Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)	323
Figure F-3:	Configuration Example	324
Figure F-4:	VMware Infrastructure Client Layout Screen	325
Figure F-5:	Add Network Wizard Screen (1)	326
Figure F-6:	Add Network Wizard Screen (2)	326
Figure F-7:	Add Network Wizard Screen (3)	327
Figure F-8:	Warning Screen	327
Figure F-9:	DNS and Routing Configuration Screen	328
Figure F-10:	Add Network Wizard Screen (4)	329
Figure F-11:	Add Network Wizard Screen (5)	329
Figure F-12:	Add Network Wizard Screen (6)	330
Figure F-13:	Hardware Configuration Page Screen	330
Figure F-14:	General Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen	331
Figure F-15:	General Properties Screen	331
Figure F-16:	Dynamic Discovery Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen	332
Figure F-17:	Add Target Sending Server Screen	332
Figure F-18:	CHAP Authentication Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen	333
Figure F-19:	CHAP Authentication Screen	334
Figure F-20:	Hardware Configuration Screen (1)	336
Figure F-21:	Hardware Configuration Screen (2)	336
Figure F-22:	General Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen	337
Figure F-23:	Add Storage Wizard Screen (1)	338
Figure F-24:	Add Storage Wizard Screen (2)	338
Figure F-25:	Add Storage Wizard Screen (3)	339
Figure G-1:	Storage Multipath Environment Checker	341
Figure G-2:	Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Welcome Page 1	342
Figure G-3:	Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Welcome Page 2	343
Figure G-4:	Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Ready to Install the Program	344
Figure G-5:	Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Completed	345
Figure G-6:	Storage Multipath Installer Information	345
Figure H-1:	Direct Connection	347
Figure H-2:	Connecting to Loop Topology FC Switch	348

Figure H-3 [.]	Connecting to Fabric Switch	349
Figure K-1:	Connection Between Application Server and LAN.	
Figure K-2:	Connection Between Management Server and LAN - Direct Configuration	358
Figure K-3:	Connection Between Management Server and LAN - Switch Configuration	359
Figure K-4:	Connection Between Management Server and LAN - Non-Supported Configuration	359
Figure N-1:	iSCSI Initiator Authentication Setting (General Tab) Screen	
Figure N-2:	iSCSI Initiator (General Tab) Screen	
Figure N-3:	iSCSI Initiator CHAP Secret Input Window	369

List of Tables

Table 1:	Conventions	xxi
Table 2:	Terms Used	xxi
Table 3:	Document Organization	xxii
Table 4:	Reference Documents	xxiv
Table 1-1:	UID LED (blue)	21
Table 1-2:	Service LED/Power LED (amber/green)	22
Table 1-3:	Standby LED (white)	22
Table 1-4:	CONT UID LED (blue)	22
Table 1-5:	CONT Fault LED/CONT Ready LED (amber/green)	22
Table 1-6:	FAN-Fault LED (amber)	23
Table 1-7:	BBU-Fault LED (amber)	23
Table 1-8:	PS Status LED (green/amber)	24
Table 1-9:	Maintenance Port/Management Port	25
Table 1-10:	CONT UID LED (blue)	25
Table 1-11:	HPE Ready LED/HPE Fault LED (green/amber)	28
Table 1-12:	HP Link LED/HP Fault LED (green)	28
Table 1-13:	DPE Ready LED/DPE Fault LED (green/amber)	28
Table 1-14:	DP Link LED/DP Fault LED (green/amber)	29
Table 1-15:	ID LED (blue)	29
Table 1-16:	Service LED/Power LED (amber/green)	29
Table 1-17:	Standby LED (white)	30
Table 1-18:	Active/Fault LED (green/amber) of Disk Drive	30
Table 1-19:	LED Status for Disk Array Controller Power and Disk Enclosure Power	31
Table 1-20:	Status Display LED	32
Table 1-21:	Disk Port Status	32
Table 1-22:	About Control Systems	37
Table 3-1:	Components of Rack Mount Kit	51
Table 3-2:	FC Cable Length	62
Table 3-3:	iSCSI Cable Length	62
Table 4-1:	Operating Environment of Storage Manager Client	70
Table 4-2:	Operating Environment of Storage Manager Client (JRE and OS Combinations)	72
Table 4-3:	Initialization Status of Disk Array	92
Table 7-1:	Optima3600 Optional Parts	
Table 7-2:	Optional Parts For All Series	
Table 7-3:	Disk Drive Features	
Table 8-1:	Relation between the initialization wizard and configuration settings	
Table 8-2:	Relation between the initialization wizard and configuration settings	
Table 9-1:	Trouble in Disk Array Unit (Front Panel LED Status)	
Table 9-2:	I rouble in Disk Array Unit (Rear Panel LED Status)	
Table 9-3:	I rouble in Disk Enclosure (Rear Panel Power LED Status)	
Table 9-4:	I rouble in Disk Enclosure	
Table 9-5:	Wrong SAS Cable Connection	
Table 9-6:	I rouble in Linkup of Host Port	
Table A-1:	Specifications - Disk Array	
Table A-2:	Specifications - RAID Configurations	
Table D-1:	Operating Environment (Linux)	
Table E-1:	Open-ISUSI Driver Settings	
Table H-1:	Connection of Switch	
Table I-1:	Disk Array Controller - Front	
i able I-2:	DISK Array Controller - Back	352

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing Bull's product.

This document is intended for users who have ability to build server systems and configure networks. The following systems are supported:

Supported connection servers and operating systems:



For details about Windows and Linux Storage Manager products, see *Storage Manager User's Manual*, *StoreWay Multipath User's Manual (Windows version)*, and *StoreWay Multipath for Linux User's Manual* that come with the disk array unit.

- Supported configurations: Storage Area Network (SAN) configurations and Direct Attached Storage (DAS) configurations including a recommended configuration shown in *Figure 1: Example of Recommended Configuration*.
- Others: FC switches, network switches, and modems are not supported. They must be set up by maintenance personnel.

This document is intended for use in a Windows or Linux environment.

For use in other OS environments, StoreWay disk array system must be set up by maintenance service provider. Please contact your maintenance service provider.

This document provides a general setup method of StoreWay disk array system.

Before you start the setup, make sure to have products whose license sheets are shipped together with the system and the license sheets ready.



Figure 1: Example of Recommended Configuration

This document describes how to set up the StoreWay OptimaX600 series for the first time in the recommended configuration illustrated in Figure i. For use in a different environment, modify the setup procedure as needed.

For details about software products, see manuals attached to the software products.

You may ask your maintenance service provider to perform the setup described in this document.

Remarks

This document provides information on functions achieved by the following program products:

- Storage Manager Express
- StoreWay Multipath

This document supports the following versions of the program products.

- Storage Manager Version 7.1
- StoreWay Multipath 5.0 for Windows
- StoreWay Multipath for Linux

If you are using a product of an older version, see the user's guide of the product.

Unless otherwise specified, 1 KB stands for 1024 bytes in this document.

Keep this document nearby as a handy reference.

Notes on use in countries other than Japan

This product, including software program, is an export control product designated by Export Trade Control Order, which requires permission or any appropriate procedure for export from Japan. Contact your sales agent or nearest Bull sales office if you need special material for the permission procedures.



About Voluntary Control for Interference This disk array system is the Class A category information technology equipment based on the

rules of Voluntary Control Council for Interference Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). When used in a residential environment, the equipment may cause radio interference. In this case, user may be required to take corrective actions appropriately.



In using this disk array system, inconvenience may occur when a temporary power failure due to a cause such as lightning is experienced.

As a measure for temporary power failures, it is recommended to use devices such as AC un-interruptible power supply units.



JIS C 61000-3-2 conforming item

JIS C 61000-3-2 conforming item is a product designed and manufactured to conform to the target level of harmonic current environment for commercial electrical grid based on Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) -- Part 3-2: Limits -- Limits for harmonic current emissions (equipment input current <=20 A per phase).

This chapter describes the terms and conventions used in this document. It also provides the references required while reading about Storage Manager product.

Conventions in This Document

Table 1 lists the conventions used in this document.

Table 1: Conventio	ns
--------------------	----

Convention	Description
\leq	Provides information of particular importance in operation.
	Provides supplementary information.
A CAUTION	Provides information that advises users that failure to take or avoid a specified action could result in loss of data.
	Provides information that advises users that failure to take or avoid a specific action could result in physical harm to the user or the hardware.

Table 2 lists the terms used in this document.

Table 2: Terms Used

Term	Description
Disk array unit	Refers to a set configuration of DAC and DE. Or, if the DAC is used alone, this denotes the DAC.
Disk Array Controller (DAC)	This is a unit that controls the disk array functions. This denotes a configuration consisting of a DAC enclosure and a CONT.
Disk Enclosure (DE)	Refers to a unit that is connected to the DAC and used to expand or add a disk drive.
Disk drive	Refers to a hard disk drive (HDD) or a solid state drive (SDD) with a dedicated carrier.
Dummy carrier	Refers to a dedicated dummy carrier, which is used when a disk drive is not installed.
Host bus adapter (HBA)	Refers to a Fibre Channel (FC) controller.
Network Interface Card (NIC)	Refers to an interface control device connected to a client's LAN port or an application server's Ethernet port.
Controller (CONT)	Refers to a controller in a DAC.

Term	Description
Power Supply (PS)	Refers to a power supply unit.
FC cable	Refers to a Fibre Channel cable.
FC switch	Refers to a Fibre Channel switch.
Physical Disk (PD)	Refers to a physical disk.

Table 2: Terms Used (Contd.)

Document Organization

Table 3 shows the documentation organization.

Table 3:	Document	Organization
	Document	organization

Chapter/ Appendix	Description
Chapter 1: "10verview"	This chapter describes features, components, and the basic operation of this disk array system.
Chapter 2: "Workflow - Installation to Operation"	This chapter explains the flow from the installation to operation of this disk array system.
Chapter 3: "Installing the Disk Array System"	This chapter explains how to install and connect this disk array system.
Chapter 4: "Storage Manager"	This chapter explains Storage Manager used for managing this disk array system.
Chapter 5: "Initializing a Disk Array (FC)"	This chapter explains the initialization of this disk array system in an FC environment.
Chapter 6: "Initializing a Disk Array (iSCSI)"	This chapter explains the initialization of this disk array system in an iSCSI environment.
Chapter 7: "Installing Optional Parts"	This chapter describes the preparation and installation of the optional parts of a disk array unit.
Chapter 8: "Changes to the Configuration"	This chapter explains how to modify the configuration and the settings of this disk array system.
Chapter 9: "Troubleshooting"	This chapter describes possible problems and how to solve them.
Appendix A: "Specifications"	This appendix provides the specifications of the disk array.
Appendix B: "How to Set/Check Application Server (Windows) (FC)"	This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the Windows environment, when this disk array is configured for the FC connection.
Appendix C: "How to Set/Check Application Server (Windows) (iSCSI)"	This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the Windows environment, when this disk array is configured for the iSCSI connection.
Appendix D: "How to Set/Check Application Server (Linux) (FC)"	This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the Linux environment, when this disk array is configured for the FC connection.
Appendix E: "How to Set/Check Application Server (Linux) (iSCSI)"	This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the Linux environment, when this disk array is configured for the iSCSI connection.

Chapter/ Appendix	Description
Appendix F: "How to Set/Check Application Server (VMware) (iSCSI)"	This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the VMware environment, when this disk array is configured for the iSCSI connection.
Appendix G: "Installing StoreWay Multipath"	This appendix provides the steps you should follow for installing StoreWay Multipath in a Windows or Linux environment.
Appendix H: "Notes-Using Microsoft Cluster Service in Windows Server 2003 Environment"	This appendix provides notes on using MSCS (Microsoft Cluster Service) in Windows Server 2003 environment.
Appendix I: "Notes-Connecting FC Switches in Express5800/FT Server Environment"	This appendix provides LED inspection checksheet.
Appendix I: "LED Inspection Checksheet"	This appendix provides notes on using iSCSI supported disk array unit.
Appendix J: "Notes-Using iSCSI Supported Disk Array Unit"	This appendix provides examples of iSCSI connection configuration.
Appendix K: "iSCSI Connection Configuration-Examples"	This appendix provides script for reporting information registered with iSNS server.
Appendix L: "Script for Reporting Information Registered with iSNS Server"	This appendix describes how to retrieve initiator information on application servers registered with iSNS server.
Appendix M: "Retrieve Initiator Information on Application Servers Registered with iSNS Server"	This appendix describes the CHAP authentication and its settings.

Table 3: Document Organization (Contd.)

About Other Documents

In addition to this document, information is provided to customers through the following documents.

The information provided in these documents is important and necessary for installation and stable operation. Make sure to check the documents as well.

Document	Description
Setup guide	This document is shipped together with this disk array system. The document describes how to set up the disk array system.
Installation guide	This document is shipped together with this disk array system. The document describes how to install the disk array system.
Storage Manager User's Manual	This document provides information about basic functions for using Storage Manager.
Storage Manager Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the OptimaX600 Series	This document provides information about how to set disk array configurations and how to view configuration information by using the Graphical User Interface (GUI).
Storage Manager Messages Handbook	This document lists messages (error, warning, caution, and information) displayed by Storage Manager in ID order and actions to be taken for the messages.
Storage Manager Command Reference	This document provides information about how to set disk array configurations and how to view configuration information by using the Command Line Interface (CLI).
StoreWay Multipath User's Manual (Windows version)	This document describes how to use StoreWay Multipath (Windows version).
StoreWay Multipath for Linux User's Manual	This document describes how to use Storeway Multipath (Linux version).

	Table 4:	Reference	Documents
--	----------	-----------	-----------

About Warning Labels

Warning labels are attached to components that may be hazardous to their nearby areas. The labels are intended for users to always be aware of any conceivable hazards when they use this disk array system. Do not remove or damage the labels.

If any label is not attached, coming off, or unreadable, contact your sales agent or maintenance personnel.

Disk Array Controller

Warning label for VCCI-A + weight over 34 kg	
この装置は、クラス人物等数据 装置です。この装置を実現現代 使用すると電波防衛を引き起こす ことがあります。この場合にな使 用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要 求されることがあります。 VCCI-A	Need three or more persons for safety lifting or carrying the disk array unit Do not hold any protrusion located at the front of the disk array unit.
Authentication label	
	N251 Ne write writes to the to additional to the solution of
CLASS I LASER PRODUCT APPAREIL & LASER PRODUCT Complies with 21CFR Chapter I.Subchapter J BARAKI 308-0193. JAPAN	
F	/
Contraction of the second seco	
China Rohs label	
Label for laser class 1	Caution label for dual power
本系統被劃分為 I 級雷射產品	
 Apparatet Apparaten Laite on l varustettu 	må tilkoples jordet stikkontakt skall anslutas till jordat uttag liitettävä suojamaadoituskoskettimilla uun pistorasiaan



The disk array unit might use two power supplies. When disconnecting power, be sure to disconnect both the power supplies to prevent an electrical shock.



Disposing of your used product In the European Union

EU-wide legislation as implemented in each Member State requires that used electrical and electronic products carrying the mark (left) must be disposed of separately from normal household waste. This includes Disk Array Unit or electrical accessories, such as cables or CDs.

When disposing of used products, you should comply with applicable legislation or agreements you may have. The mark on the electrical and electronic products only applies to the current European Union Member States.

Outside the European Union

If you wish to dispose of used electrical and electronic products outside the European Union, please contact your local authority and ask for the correct method of disposal.

Controller (CONT)



HPE, DPE



The following illustration shows the label for HPE, DPE. The label is attached to the same location in other modules.

Power Supply



Battery



Fan



Disk Enclosure





The disk enclosure might use two power supplies. When disconnecting power, be sure to disconnect the two power supplies to prevent an electrical shock.

Power Cable



For overseas use, please use appropriate AC cord set, which is certified by each countries' wiring rule.
Disposal of the Unit

This disk array system uses lithium batteries and nickel batteries.

The batteries are installed as follows:

Controller: lithium (button) battery

Controller: nickel metal hydride battery

The unit must be recycled or discarded according to applicable local and national regulations. Bull encourages owners of informational technology (IT) equipment to responsibly recycle their equipment when it is no longer needed.

Chapter 1 10verview

This chapter provides an overview of the Bull Storage Disk Array Unit.

In this chapter	
"Features" on page 2	
"Components" on page 3	-
"Basic Operation" on page 34	

1.1 Features

The following describes features of this disk array unit.

1.1.1 High Performance and Large Capacity

- The following host interfaces are supported:
 Fibre channel (FC-AL/Fabric, 8Gbps)
 - □ iSCSI (1Gbps, 10Gbps)
 - □ SAS (6Gbps)
- The following disk drive types are supported:
 - 300 GB (15Krpm), 450 GB (15Krpm), 600 GB (15Krpm), and encryption 600 GB (15Krpm) 3.5 inch SAS disk drives
 - 300 GB (10Krpm), 450 GB (10Krpm), 600 GB (10Krpm), and encryption 600 GB (10Krpm) 2.5 inch SAS disk drives
 - □ 1 TB (7.2Krpm) and 2 TB (7.2Krpm) 3.5 inch NL-SAS disk drives
 - □ 1 TB (7.2Krpm) 2.5 inch NL-SAS disk drive
 - □ 400 GB 3.5 inch SSD
 - □ 100 GB 2.5 inch SSD
- Up to 384 disk drives (up to 96 disk drives per disk port) can be installed.
- SAS disk drives, NL-SAS disk drives and SSDs
- can be installed together on a disk enclosure.
- The disk array can be connected as a storage system for Blade, NovaScale, extreme computing, and AIX servers.

1.1.2 High Reliability and High Availability

- Key components such as controllers, cache memories, power supplies and fans are redundantly configured.
- Cache data is dually written to controllers. Even if a controller fails, integrity of the data on the caches of the other controller is maintained.
- Data on caches is automatically saved in the internal flash memory by using the battery power when a power outage occurs.
- The disk array supports RAID-1,5, 6, 10, 50, 60, and TM by default. Even if a disk drive fails, operation can be continued without causing data loss.
- Multiple hot spare disks can be configured.

1.1.3 Operation Management

Storage Manager allows for basic configuration settings, status display and status monitoring easily. Storage Manager Suite program product, which needs to be purchased separately, allows for centralized management of multiple disk array units and using function extension programs.

1.2 Components

1.2.1 Disk Array Controller

This section describes names and functions of disk array components. For more details about LED lighting patterns, see *Section 1.2.3: "LED Display"*.

1.2.1.1 Appearance

(1) Disk array configuration (Perspective view)



Figure 1-1: Disk Array Configuration (Perspective View)

(2) Front view



Figure 1-2: Front View (Without Front Bezel)



Figure 1-3: Front View (With Front Bezel)



For information on removing the front bezel, see Section 7.3.1: "Front Bezel".

(3) Rear view

				CODE LABEL
--	--	--	--	------------

Figure 1-4: Configuration Example (Two FC 4-Port HPEs Installed)

Location name

Free	Free	Free	(8) HPE #3	(8) HPE #1	Free	Free	(9) DPE #3	(9) DPE #1	(7) MNG #1	(6) PS #1
	Free	Free	(8) HPE #2	(8) HPE #0	Free	Free	(9) DPE #2	(9) DPE #0	(7) MNG #0	(6) PS #0

Label	Description
(1) Basic enclosure	This is a cabinet in which disk array components are installed.
(2) LED card	This shows the disk array status.
(3) CONT (Controller)	This is a unit that controls main disk array functions. Two controllers are installed on a disk array.
(4) BBU (Battery backup unit)	This provides power required to back up cache data in case of power outage. Two battery backup units are installed on a disk array.
(5) Fan	The fan is used to cool the components in a disk array. Four fans are installed on a disk array.

Label	Description
(6) PS (Power supply)	The power supply provides power to the disk array. Two power supplies are installed on a disk array.
(7) MNG (Management card)	The management card is used to control and maintain a disk array. Two management cards are installed on a disk array.
(8) HPE (Host port extension)	This is an interface between a disk array and host machine. Two to four HPEs are installed on a disk array.
(9) DPE (Disk Port Extension)	This is an interface between a disk array and enclosures. Four DPEs are installed on a disk array.
(10) DC button	This button is used to start or shut down the disk array. There are two types of shutdown; normal shutdown and forced shutdown. The disk array is forcibly shut down by holding down this button for eight or more seconds.
(11) Key cylinder	The key cylinder is used to lock the front bezel when it is attached to the unit.

1.2.1.2 CONT (Controller), BBU (Battery Backup Unit), and Fan



Figure 1-5: Controller Installed with BBUs and Fans





Figure 1-7: Fan

1.2.1.3 PS (Power Supply)







Figure 1-9: Front View of Power Supply

1.2.1.4 MNG (Management Card)



Figure 1-10: Perspective View of Management Card



Figure 1-11: Front View of Management Card

1.2.1.5 HPE (Host Port Extension)

(1) FC-HPE



Figure 1-12: Perspective View of FC-HPE





(2) 1G-iSCSI-HPE



Figure 1-14: Perspective View of 1G-iSCSI-HPE



Figure 1-15: Front View of 1G-iSCSI-HPE

(3) 10G-iSCSI-HPE









(4) SAS-HPE



Figure 1-18: Perspective View of SAS-HPE



Figure 1-19: Front View of SAS-HPE

1.2.1.6 DPE (Disk Port Extension)



Figure 1-20: Perspective View of DPE



Figure 1-21: Front View of DPE

1.2.2 Disk Enclosure

This section describes names and functions of disk enclosure components.

1.2.2.1 Front View



Figure 1-22: 2.5 Inch Disk Drive Model



Figure 1-23: 3.5 Inch Disk Drive Model

(1) ID LED	(2) Service LED	
	່ ອີບ	jL 💁
(4) Standby LED	(3) Power LED	(6) Key cylinder

Figure 1-24: Front Bezel (Option)



2.5 inch disk drive

3.5 inch disk drive

Figure 1-25: Disk Drive Front View

Label	Description	
(1) ID LED (blue)	This LED is used to identify the unit.	
(2) Service LED (amber)	These LEDs indicate the status of the disk array	
(3) Power LED (green)	controller.	
(4) Standby LED (white)	This LED indicates the DC off and on operation is available.	
(5) Disk drive/Dummy carrier	Up to 24 disk drives/dummy carriers can be installed on the 2.5 inch disk drive model. Upto 12 disk drives/dummy carriers can be installed on the 3.5 inch disk drive model.	
	 Disk drive: Hard disk drive with a dedicated carrier (HDD) or SSD. 	
	Dummy carrier: Dummy to prevent wind blow.	
(6) Key cylinder	The key cylinder is used to lock the front bezel when it is attached to the unit.	

Label	Description
(7) Active LED (green)	Each disk drive has one each of these LEDs. The
(8) Fault LED (amber)	LEDs indicate the disk drive status.
(9) Ejector	The ejector is used to remove and attach the disk drive from or to a disk array controller or a disk enclosure.

1.2.2.2 Rear View



Figure 1-26: Disk Enclosure Rear View (with AC Power Supplies)

Label	Description
(1) Power supply (PS0/PS1)	Two power supplies are installed on a disk enclosure.
(2) Adapter (ADP0/ADP1)	Two adapters are installed on a disk enclosure.

1.2.2.3 Power Supply



AC power supply

Label	Description
(1) Power plug	Use the power cable shipped together with the disk array for supplying power to the disk array.
(2) Power cable clamp	The power cable clamp prevents the power cable from coming off unintentionally.
(3) Ejector	The ejector is used to install and remove a power supply.
(4) AC switch	The AC switch is used to power on and off input of power supply.
(5) Input Good LED (green)	This LED is lit if power is supplied when the AC switch is turned on.
(6) Fault LED (amber)	This LED is lit when an error is detected.
(7) Service Action LED (blue)	This LED is not used in this disk array system. The LED is not lit all the time.
(8) DC Good LED (green)	This LED is lit when DC output is normal.
(9) Standby Power Good LED (green)	This LED is lit when DC output is in the waiting status.

1.2.2.4 Adapter



Figure 1-28: Adapter

Label	Description
(1) Maintenance port	This port is for maintenance. This port is not used under normal conditions.
(2) ID configuration dial	The ID configuration dial is not used.
(3) ID display LED	The ID display LED is not used.
(4) LAN port	The LAN port is used for maintenance. It is not used under normal operation.
(5) Status display LED	For details about the status display LED, see Section 1.2.3: "LED Display".
(6) Disk port (IN)	A disk port (IN) is used to connect the disk array controller or disk enclosure located before the given enclosure. Each adapter has two disk ports for (IN). Typically, only the right (IN) port is used. Each port has a fault LED (right) and a link LED (left).
(7) Disk port (OUT)	The disk port (OUT) is used to connect the disk enclosure behind the given enclosure. Each adapter has one disk port (OUT). Each port has a fault LED (right) and a link LED (left).
(8) Ejector	The ejector is used to attach and remove the adapter.

1.2.3 LED Display



1.2.3.1 Disk Array Controller: Front View



Table 1-1: UID LED (blue)

(1) UID LED	Meaning
Not lit	Not selected
Lit	Selected

(2) Service LED	(3) Power LED	Meaning
Not lit	Lit	Running successfully.
Lit	Lit	Maintenance being required or performed (such as in the course of recovery)
Lit 0.2 seconds Not lit 0.8 seconds	Lit	In the course of power on
Lit 4 seconds Not lit 8 seconds	Lit	Maintenance being required (Backup has failed. Written data may have vanished.)
Lit 1 second Not lit 1 second	Lit	Firmware being update online
Not lit	Lit 0.2 seconds Not lit 0.2 seconds	Auto flushing (*) has finished and power can be turned off.
Not lit	Not lit	Powered off.

Table 1-2:	Service	LED/Power LED	(amber/green)
	0011100		(annoon/groon/



When access to a host connection port is disconnected for five minutes, transition to this mode takes place automatically to be prepared for power-off. When access from the host connection port is restored, ordinary status is restored.

Table 1-3: Standby LED (white)

(4) Standby LED	Status
Not lit	DC on and off operation is not available.
Lit	DC on and off operation is available.

Table 1-4: CONT UID LED (blue)

(4) Standby LED	Status
Not lit	CONT not selected.
Lit	CONT selected.

Table 1-5: CONT Fault LED/CONT Ready LED (amber/green)

(6) CONT Fault LED	(7) CONT Ready LED	Status
Not lit	Lit 1 second Not lit 1 second	Running successfully.
Not lit	Blinking fast	Shutting down or backing up data in the memory.
Not lit	Lit	Starting up or rebooting.
Lit 1 second Not lit 1 second	Lit	Waiting for the disk enclosure to be powered on.

(6) CONT Fault LED	(7) CONT Ready LED	Status
Lit	Lit	Failure has occurred.
Lit	Blinking fast	Failure has occurred (log collectable).
Lit	Lit 1 second Not lit 1 second	Retrying as disk enclosure shortage has been detected.
		Disk Port blocked.
Blinking fast	Lit 1 second Not lit 1 second	Updating firmware online.

Table 1-6: FAN-Fault LED (amber)

(4) Standby LED	Status
Not lit	Running successfully.
Lit	Failure

Table 1-7: BBU-Fault LED (amber)

(4) Standby LED	Status
Not lit	Running successfully.
Lit	Detected BBU failure.
Blinking	Warning for the end of the BBU life cycle

1.2.3.2 Disk Array Controller: PS (Power Supply)



Figure 1-30: Disk Array Controller: PS (Power Supply)

Table 1-8: PS Status LED (green/amber)

(1) PS Status LED	Status	
Not lit	No AC-Power	
	AC power is not provided to the power supply.	
Lit in amber	Fault (Critical)	
Lit in amber 0.5 seconds Not lit 0.5 seconds	Fault (Warning)	
Lit in green 0.5 seconds	AC-ON, DC output OFF	
Not lit 0.5 seconds	Indicates the disk array controller DC-OFF state.	
Lit in green 0.5 seconds	AC-ON, DC output ON	
	Indicates the disk array controller DC-ON state.	
Lit in amber	AC input disconnected	
	When the AC input is disconnected, the PS Status LED is lit in amber about for 30 seconds, and then enters No AC-Power.	
		Even if AC input is fed again in this status,
	A CAUTION	DC is not output. Therefore, disconnect AC input, and then provide AC input again when LED went out.

1.2.3.3 Disk Array Controller: MNG





LED	Status
(1) Maintenance port Link LED (Green)	Lit = connected
(3) Management port Link LED (Green)	Blinking = data is being transferred
(2) Maintenance port Active LED (Green/Amber)	Lit in amber = link speed is 1Gbps
(4) Management port Active LED (Green/Amber)	Lit in green = link speed is 100Mbps
	Not lit = link speed is 10Mbps

Table 1-10: CONT UID LED (blue)

(5) CONT UID LED	Status
Not lit	CONT not selected
Lit	CONT selected



The function of CONT UID LED on the management card is the same as that of CONT UID LED on the front of the disk array controller.

1.2.3.4 Disk Array Controller: HPE

(1) FC-HPE



Figure 1-32: Disk Array Controller: FC-HPE

(2) 1G-iSCSI-HPE





(3) 10G-iSCSI-HPE





(4) SAS-HPE



Figure 1-35: Disk Array Controller: SAS-HPE

	,	
(1) HPE Ready LED	(2) HPE Fault LED	Meaning
Lit 1 second	Not lit	Running successfully.
Not lit 1 second		
Not lit	Lit	Failure

Table 1-11: HPE Ready LED/HPE Fault LED (green/amber)

Table 1-12: HP Link LED/HP Fault LED (green)

LED	Status
(3) HP Link LED (Green)	Lit = linkup Not lit = link down
(4) HP Access LED (Green)	Lit or blinking during I/O access
(3) and (4) blinking at the same time	Every two seconds = offline Every one second = being powered off Other = invalid port settings

1.2.3.5 Disk Array Controller: DPE





Table 1-13:	DPE Ready	/ LED/DPE Fa	ult LED (a	reen/amber)
			~~~ (g	

(1) DPE Ready LED	(2) DPE Fault LED	Meaning
Lit 1 second	Not lit	Running successfully.
Not lit 1 second		
Not lit	Lit	Failure

LED	Status
(3) DP Link LED (Green)	Lit = linkup Not lit = link down
(4) DP Fault LED (Amber)	Lit = An error is detected Not lit= Normal

#### Table 1-14: DP Link LED/DP Fault LED (green/amber)

#### 1.2.3.6 Disk Array Controller, Disk Enclosure, and Disk Drives

The front view of a disk array controller, a disk enclosure and disk drives (without the front bezel).



#### Figure 1-37: LED Display - Disk Array Unit, Disk Enclosure, and Disk Drives

#### Table 1-15: ID LED (blue)

(1) ID LED	Status
Not lit	Not selected
Lit	Selected

#### Table 1-16: Service LED/Power LED (amber/green)

(2) Service LED	(3) Power LED	Meaning
Not lit	Lit	Running successfully.
Lit	Lit	Maintenance being required or being performed (such as in the course of recovery).

(2) Service LED	(3) Power LED	Meaning
Lit 1second Not lit 1second	Lit	In the course of power on. Firmware being updated online.
Lit 4 seconds Not lit 8 seconds	Lit	Maintenance being required (Backup has failed. Written data may have vanished.)
Not lit	Lit 0.2 seconds Not lit 0.2 seconds	Auto flushing (*) has finished and power can be turned off.
Not lit	Not lit	Powered off.

Table 1-16 [.]	Service   ED/Power   EC	(amher/green) ((	Contd )
	Service LLD/I Ower LLL	(annben/green) (	Somu.j



When access to a host connection port is disconnected for five minutes, transition to this mode takes place automatically to be prepared for power-off. When access from the host connection port is restored, ordinary status is restored.

#### Table 1-17: Standby LED (white)

(4) Standby LED	Status
Not lit	DC on and off operation is not available
Lit	DC on and off operation is available

#### Table 1-18: Active/Fault LED (green/amber) of Disk Drive

(5) Active LED	(6) Fault LED	Status
Not lit	Not lit	Powered off.
Lit	Not lit	Ordinary (READY)
Flashing	Not lit	Ordinary (in the course of ACCESS)
Flashing	Flashing	Recovered
Lit	Flashing	Hard disk drive save-energy mode
Lit	Lit	Failure

#### 1.2.3.7 Disk Array Controller Power and Disk Enclosure Power





(1) Input good LED	(2) Fault LED	(3) Service action LED	(4) DC good LED	(5) Standby good LED	
Green	Amber	Blue	Green	Green	Status
Lit	Not lit	-	Lit	-	Running successfully.
Lit	Lit	-	Lit	-	Problem in power supply fan. Power supply temperature warning.
Lit	Lit	-	Not lit	-	Power supply output problem. Power supply temperature problem.
Lit	-	-	-	Lit	INPUT-ON (12V and 5V no output, 5Vstb output).
Not lit	-	-	-	-	Input problem.

Table 1-19: LED Status for Disk Array Controller Power and Disk Enclosure Pow	ver
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----



The service action LED is lit when directed by a device connected to a port or the system.

## 1.2.3.8 Adapter (ADP)





(1) Ready LED	(2) Fault LED	(3) ID LED	
Green	Amber	Blue	Status
Not lit	Not lit	-	Not connected or, not powered on.
Flashing	Not lit	-	Running successfully.
Flashing	Flashing in a cycle of 0.5 second	-	Initializing firmware.
Flashing	Flashing in a cycle of 1 second	-	Error between adapters has been detected.
Flashing	Lit	-	Error in the adapter has been detected. (Operation continued).
Not lit	Lit	-	Error in the adapter has been detected. (Unable to continue operation).
-	-	Lit	The device is selected.

Table 1-2	0: Stat	us Disp	lay LED
-----------	---------	---------	---------

Table 1-21: Disk Port Status

Disk port	Status
(4) Link LED (LNK) (Green)	Lit = linkup Not lit = link down
(5) Fault LED (FLT) (Amber)	Lit = An error is detected Not lit= Normal

## Location and port number



# 1.3 Basic Operation

## 1.3.1 Powering On the Disk Array System

#### 1.3.1.1 AC Operating Mode

The disk array unit has a mechanism that powers the unit itself on automatically, not through operation of the power switch, according to power supply to AC.

AC operating mode is enabled in the factory default settings. AC operating mode can be disabled by issuing a certain command to the disk array unit. When AC operating mode is disabled, you need to use the power switch to control the power of the disk array unit.



When AC operating mode is disabled, the power control function through ESMPRO/AC is not available because the control circuits on the controllers are not powered on. Make sure to enable AC operating mode when you use the power control function through the ESMPRO/AC.

For information on how to change the factory default settings to disable AC operating mode, see *Storage Manager Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the OptimaX600 Series.*
## 1.3.1.2 Powering On the Disk Array System

Follow the steps below to power on the disk array system:

Step	Operation		
0	Check the disk array controller and the disk enclosures are connected correctly. In this step, do not connect the power supply input cable to the disk array controller or power on the disk array unit.		
1	Connect the power supply input cable to the units, in the order of the disk enclosure and the disk array controller, or power on the units at the same time or in the order of the disk enclosure and the disk array controller.		
	When AC operating mode is enabled (factory default settings), the disk array system with AC power supplies is automatically powered on at the time the power supply input cable is connected to the disk array controller or the disk array unit is powered on. Disk enclosures are sequentially powered on in association with the disk array controller. Proceed to step 3.		
	If AC operating mode is disabled, proceed to step 2, otherwise proceed to step 3.		
2	<b>Step 2 should be performed only when AC operating mode is disabled.</b> Press the power button of a controller (CONT), which is located at the front of the disk array controller, for approximately one second until fans start to rotate, by using the attached stick. The disk array controller will be powered on. The disk enclosures will be powered on sequentially as the disk array controller is powered on. Proceed to step 3.		
	Press the DC button of either of the controllers (CONT). You do not need to press buttons of both controllers.		
	<b>CAUTION</b> If your press the power buttons for 8 seconds or more, power is forcefully turned off, which may give negative impact on the disk array system.		

Step	Operation		
3	Do not operate the disk array system until the Power LED (green) located at the front of the disk array unit is lit and the Service LED (amber) goes off after cyclic flashing.		
	<ul> <li>It takes approximately six (for minimum configuration) to eight (maximum configuration) minutes for initialization and the self test after the power on.</li> </ul>		
	During this period, the Service LED (amber) flashes cyclically.		
	If the Service LED (amber) does not go off and the Power LED (green) is not lit after 10 minutes (both LEDs are located at the front of the disk array unit), the disk array system may be failing.		
	See Chapter 9, "Troubleshooting" .		
	If the snapshot function or the data replication function is used, initialization and the self test described above take longer.		
4	Power on the application servers (hosts).		
	Make sure to power on the application servers after the disk array system is successfully started.		

## 1.3.1.3 Notes on Powering On the Disk Array System

### 1. When powered on from the battery backup status

If the disk array system stopped due to an unexpected power outage, backed up cache data to the internal flash memory, and then restarted, high-speed writing by using cache (Cache Fast Write) will not be performed until charging the batteries used for the backup is complete, which makes performance of the disk array system degrade. This is because next backup is not guaranteed while batteries are not fully charged, and data is written to nonvolatile disk drives but not to caches that may get volatilized.

It takes a maximum of eight hours to complete charging discharged batteries.

### 2. Restarting the disk array system after user data loss

If a loss of data in caches has been experienced and then the disk array controller is powered on, the Service LED on the disk array unit repeats flashing for four seconds and then not lit for eight seconds. Follow the steps below to start the disk array system.

Step	Operation	
1	Perform power off according to the steps in <i>Section 1.3.2: "Powering Off the Disk Array System"</i> .	
2	Perform power on according to the steps in <i>Section 1.3.1: "Powering On the Disk Array System"</i> .	
	<ul> <li>If the disk array system does not start up successfully, it may be failing.</li> <li>Performance of the disk array system degrades until battery charging is complete, which takes a maximum of eight hours.</li> </ul>	

## 3. When the snapshot function is used

If the snapshot function is used, updated information is copied from disk drives to the cache memory when the disk array unit is started.

Because of this, the disk array unit's start up time is delayed by 10 seconds per 1 TB of the updated information.

## 1.3.1.4 Power control systems without using power switches

## 1. Control Systems

*Table 1-22: About Control Systems* describes power control systems that do not use power switches.

Control system	Host OS	Feature
ESMPRO/AC (Works together with UPS)	Windows Linux	This control system uses a server for power control, which can be associated with hosts. For details, see <i>ESMPRO/AC manual</i> .
ESMPRO/AC (Automatic operation)	Windows Linux	This control system uses a server for power control and allows for automatic operation. For details, see <i>ESMPRO/AC manual</i> .
UPS (Does not work with UPS)	Not specified	This control system is for instantaneous power interruption. Because there is no association, when the retention period of UPS elapses, temporary power-off followed by reboot takes place. Cached data, however, is protected.

Table 1-22: About Control Systems



Association is a mechanism to notify the disk array system of interruption of power supply to the UPS and to start shutdown.



If you use the UPS control system, establish redundancy by providing a UPS for each power supply of a device.

Make sure that a failure of a single UPS does not cause simultaneous power failure of PS0 and PS1.

### 2. Notes on using a UPS and automatic operation

Where ESMPRO/AC association is used together with the disk array system, power must be turned off in a certain order.

### AC power off sequence

1 Application server  $\rightarrow$  2 FC switch  $\rightarrow$  3 Disk array unit  $\rightarrow$  4 Disk enclosure  $\rightarrow$  5 Management server (Only ESMPRO/AC)

If multiple disk enclosures are used, you do not need to specify the sequence of power off among the disk enclosures.



Figure 1-40: AC Power Off Sequence (FC Port Connection)

## 1.3.2 Powering Off the Disk Array System

## 1.3.2.1 Powering Off the Disk Array System

Follow the steps below to power off the disk array system:

Step	Operation		
1	Stop or power off application servers (hosts).		
	Make sure to check application servers (hosts) are stopped or powered off.		
2	Press the power button of a controller (CONT) located at the front of the disk array unit by using the attached stick. Then confirm that the Service LED starts to flash rapidly.		
	Press the power button of either of the controllers (CONT). You do not need to press buttons of both controllers.		
3	Wait for the Power LED (green) located at the front of the disk array unit to go off.		
	<ul> <li>With this process, the disk array unit writes data that is on caches and has not been written to disks to disks.</li> </ul>		
	When writing the data is complete, the disk array system is automatically powered off.		
	If the Power LED (green) located at the front of the disk array unit does not go off after 10 minutes, the disk array system may be failing.		
	See Chapter 9, "Troubleshooting" .		
4	The power supply of the disk array system can now be stopped.		
	Unlike power on, there is no rules for sequence of stopping.		

### 1.3.2.2 Notes on Turning Off the AC Power

## 1. Backing up user data

If the power of this disk array system is turned off without going through the power off procedure described in *Section 1.3.2: "Powering Off the Disk Array System*", or the power control systems without using power buttons section described in *Section 1.3.1: "Powering On the Disk Array System*", the user data on caches will be backed up on the flash memory of the unit.

Data will not be lost even if the power is turned off without going through the procedures.

## 2. Notes on using the data replication function

The update information (= storage system information) managed by the data replication function (DynamicDataReplication or RemoteDataReplication) is created on a replication reserved volume or the cache memory.

If no replication reserved volume has been created, the update information mentioned above is created only on the cache memory. In these circumstances, even if the disk array system is powered off according to the procedure described in *Section 1.3.2: "Powering Off the Disk Array System"*, the status of the disk array system becomes backup status when the disk array system is stopped. If the backup fails, the storage system information is lost and the status of the disk array system becomes one of the following six statuses.

Activity	Synchronization	Pair Status	
Separate	Separated	All spaces are different. There is no change in the status.	
	Separating	The status becomes fault, where copying is stopped.	
Replicate	Replicating	All spaces are different. Replication is automatically restarted from the beginning. There is no change in the status.	
	Synchronized		
Restore	Restoring	The status becomes fault, where copying is stopped.	
	Synchronized	All spaces are different. Replication is automatically restarted from the beginning. There is no change in the status.	

For recovery of a pair whose status is fault, perform the following steps for replication.

- a. Perform Forced Separate for the RV target.
- b. Perform the steps to restore the previous status (Replicate  $\rightarrow$  Separate, or Restore) again.



Copy is started again. All the spaces of logical disks are targeted, which means full copy is performed.

- When the replication function is used, it is strongly recommended that a user use the storage system information saving function and create a replication reserved volume by Storage Manager. The capacity of the replication reserved volume will be 8.9 GB.
- Powering off by performing the ordinary steps backs up storage system information (differential map, etc.) in a replication reserved volume. If the disk array system is powered off while no replication reserved volume has been created, the state of the disk array system becomes backup. If no replication reserved volume is used, it is recommended to power on the unit 24 hours.



The storage system information saving function is a function to back up the storage system information such as differential map for business volumes (MV) and replication volumes (RV) to disk drives.

### 1.3.2.3 Auto Cache Flush Function

This is a function to automatically save user data, difference map, configuration information and the like on caches to disk drives when host IO is not issued for five minutes.

If power off takes place without going through the ordinary procedure while data that has not been written is left on caches, the backup function works to protect the data on caches. However, because this backup function saves cached data in the flash memory by using batteries in the disk array system, the data may get lost if battery power is not sufficient and saving data fails.

Auto Cache Flush Function assures data on caches to be written to disk drives and prevents data loss even if a situation mentioned above arises.

Completion of Auto Cache Flush can be checked from high-speed flashing of POWER LED that flashes every 0.2 seconds.

## **Chapter 2 Workflow - Installation to Operation**

This chapter explains the flow of disk array unit from installation to operation.

## **Disk Array Unit Installation**

## 1. Installation Preparation

- Prepare the following:
  - Machines Client machine to run the Storage Manager client and the application server.
  - Cables LAN cable (shielded), interface cables (FC and/or iSCSI), and power supply cable.
  - □ IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway addresses for the disk array unit.
  - □ Network devices (as necessary).
  - Disk drives.
  - **D** Tools and accessories like Phillips screwdriver and installation CDs.
- Perform the preliminary setup of the application server.

See Section 3.1: "Preparation"

### 2. Hardware Installation

- Install disk array unit in the rack.
- Install disk enclosure in the rack.
- Install disk drive.

See Section 3.2: "Installation"

### 3. Cable Connections

Connect the following cables:

- SAS cable to connect disk array unit and disk enclosure.
- FC cable to connect disk array unit and application server (for FC).
- LAN cable or optical Ethernet cable to connect disk array unit and application server (for iSCSI).
- LAN cable to connect disk array unit, application server, and client.
- Power supply cable to connect disk enclosure to power supply.

Power supply cable to connect disk array unit to power supply. See Section 3.3: "Connection"



# **Software Installation and Configuration**

Perform the following installation and configuration settings:

1. Pre-requisites

Configure the web browser to start Storage Manager client (Web GUI). See Section 4.2: "Before Starting Storage Manager Client"

- 2. Setup
  - Install Network Setting Tool on Storage Manager client machine.
  - Configure the IP address of the disk array using Network Setting Tool.
  - Set the time zone of the disk array. See *Section 4.3: "Setup"*
- 3. Storage Manager Agent Utility
  - Install the Storage Manager Agent Utility on an application server.
     See Section 4.4: "Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility on Application Server"
- 4. Storage Manager Client
  - Enter the name or IP address of the disk array in the address bar of the web browser to start the Storage Manager client.

See Section 4.5: "Starting Storage Manager Client"

3

# **Disk Array Unit Initialization**

Perform the following initialization methods based on how the disk array is configured:

- If the disk array is configured for only FC connection, initialize it using FC method.
- If the disk array is configured for only iSCSI connection, initialize it using iSCSI method.
- If the disk array is configured for both FC and iSCSI connection, then perform one of the following methods:
  - Use the FC method to initialize the disk array and then use the iSCSI method.
  - Use the iSCSI method to initialize the disk array and then use the FC method.

### Initialize using FC method

1. Collect host information from the application server.

See Section 5.2: "Collecting Host Information From Application Servers"

- 2. Initialize disk array using the Storage Manager.
  - a. Start the Initialization Wizard and follow the instructions.
  - b. Bind Pool.
  - c. (Optional) Bind Hot Spare.
  - d. Bind Logical Disk.
  - e. Set the application server (host) to which logical disk will be assigned.
  - f. Assign logical disk to the application server.

See Section 5.3: "Initialization by Storage Manager"

3. Check if the application server to which the logical disk has been assigned is connected to the disk array.

See Section 5.4: "Checking Connection from Application Servers"

### Initialize using iSCSI method

- 1. Initialize disk array using the Storage Manager.
  - a. Start the Initialization Wizard and follow the instructions.
  - b. Perform iSCSI initiator setting on the application server using iSCSI Setup Tool.
  - c. Bind Pool.
  - d. (Optional) Bind Hot Spare.
  - e. Bind Logical Disk.
  - f. Assign logical disk to the application server.

# See Section 6.2: "Initialization by Storage Manager"

2. Check if the application server to which the logical disk has been assigned is connected to the disk array.

# Chapter 3 Installing the Disk Array System

This chapter describes how to prepare, install, and connect a disk array unit.

In this chapter
"Preparation" on page 48
"Installation" on page 51
"Connection" on page 62

## 3.1 Preparation

The following accessories and tools are required for setup. Also the following preparation must to be completed for the application servers to which a disk array unit will be connected.

- 1. Prepare the following items:
  - Application servers, client, installation CD-ROM
  - LAN cables (shielded)
    - Use a crossover cable to connect a unit and a client directly.
    - □ Use straight cables to connect a unit and a client via hub, etc.
  - Interface cables to connect application servers
  - IP addresses to be assigned to the disk array unit as many as ports to be connected Also contact the network administrator to obtain subnet masks and gateway addresses.
  - Network devices (as necessary)
  - Phillips screwdriver (No. 1) (for screwing)
  - Three or more disk drives. Purchase new disk drive products



It is recommended to move a unit by two or more persons.

2. Implement the following setup preliminarily on the application server to which the disk array unit will be connected:



Figure 3-1: Flow of Preliminary Setups

## For FC Interface

a. Retrieve World Wide Port Name (WWPNs) assigned to host bus adapters (FC controllers). This setup procedure is applicable only when WWN mode (WWPNs of host bus adapters are used to assign to LUNs to application servers) is set for AccessControl. During the setup, the WWPNs of the host bus adapters attached to the application servers are retrieved by using software. It is recommended to make a note of the WWPNs (i.e. checking the host bus adapter locations at the server extension slots and taking a note of the WWPNs) because they will be useful for replacement (for checking the host bus adapters location at the server extension slot and the WWPN) if the host bus adapter fails.

In case the WWPNs of the host bus adapters cannot be retrieved by using software, you may need to enter the WWPNs manually.

b. Attach the host bus adapters.

Skip this step when host bus adapters have already been attached to the application servers. Attach the host bus adapters to the application servers by following the user's manuals of the host bus adapters and the application servers.

- c. Install the host bus adapter drivers.
  Skip this step when the drivers of the host bus adapters attached to the application servers have already been installed and set up on the application servers.
  Install and set up the drivers by following the setup procedures described in the manuals that come with the host bus adapter products to be installed on the servers or the information offered on the Web sites.
- d. Install StoreWay Multipath (Windows/Linux).

Skip this step when StoreWay Multipath has already been installed and set up on the application servers or no Storage Multipath will be installed.



Complete step c before implementing step d.

For information about how to install Storage Multipath, see *Appendix G: "Installing StoreWay Multipath"*.

## 3.2 Installation

## 3.2.1 Mounting a Disk Array Unit on a Rack

This section describes how to install a disk array unit and a disk enclosure in a rack.

Follow the descriptions in Installation Guide.

A disk array unit weighs up to 31Kg (when 3.5-inch hard disk drives are installed). A disk enclosure weighs up to 29Kg (when 3.5-inch disk drives are installed).

They must be mounted on a rack by two or more persons.

• Mount disk enclosure(s) and then a disk array unit from the top of a rack.

The following describes how to attach the rack mount kit that has come with this disk array system to a rack:

No.	Component name	Quantity
1	Rail (L)	1
2	Rail (R)	1
3	M5 screw	12
4	Cable clamp	4
5	Repeat tie	5

 Table 3-1: Components of Rack Mount Kit



Figure 3-2: Rack Mount Kit

1. Check the rail (L)

The side with the inner is rear.

The rail (L) looks L-shaped when it is seen from the front side.

Attach the rail to the left side of the rack which is seen from its front side.





2. Align both sides of the bottom of the rail with the 1U delimiting marks on the rear pole of the rack and then let the two projections on the inner into the holes on the pole.



Figure 3-4: Attaching Rail to Rear Pole

3. Align both side of the bottom of the rail with the 1U delimiting marks on the front pole of the rack and let the two projections on the rail into the holes on the pole.

There are two types of rack, rectangular-hole rack and circular-hole rack. Each of them has a different type of projection on the rail.

Insert M5 screws into the two central screw holes on the front pole of the rack to screw the rail.



Figure 3-5: Screwing Rail on Front Pole

4. Move the inner towards the rear pole of the rack and let the two projections in the holes on the pole.



Figure 3-6: Attaching Rail to Rear Pole

5. Insert an M5 screw through a cable clamp into each of two screw holes on the rear pole of the rack to screw the inner.

Orient cable clamps as shown in the figure on the right when attaching them.



Figure 3-7: Attaching Inner Rail

- 6. Attach the rail (R) on the right side of the rack by using the same procedure as above. Installation of rack mount kit is now complete.
- 7. Before mounting a unit, attach ear bezels or front bezel clips. If you use an optional front bezel, attach the bezel clips that come with the front bezel as shown in the following illustration. If no front bezel is used, attach the ear bezels that come with the unit.

Both can be attached to the unit by sliding from the side of the unit.



Figure 3-8: Attaching Ear Bezels or Front Bezel Clips

8. Mount the unit. Put the front part of the unit on the front part of the rack. Then lift up the unit, put the rear part of the unit on the rail and slide the rail.

<b>AUTION</b>	<ul> <li>Mounting a unit on a rack should be implemented by two or more persons.</li> <li>Take care not to injure your fingers, etc. when moving a unit because it is heavy.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Take care not to drop a unit when moving it.</li> </ul>

9. Secure the unit on the front side of the rack.

Screw two points on each of the right and left sides of the front side of the unit by using M5 screws. Mounting the unit on the rack is now complete.



Figure 3-9: Securing Unit 1



Figure 3-10: Securing Unit 2

## 3.2.2 Mounting a Disk Enclosure on a Rack

When you have purchased a disk enclosure optionally, install the enclosure in the rack.

The installation procedure is the same as the procedure for mounting a disk array unit in a rack. See *Section 3.2.1: "Mounting a Disk Array Unit on a Rack*" for more details about the procedure.

## 3.2.3 Installing Disk Drives

Follow the procedure below.

- 1. When a front bezel has been attached, detach it.
- 2. Remove dummy carriers from the slots where disk drives will be installed.
- 3. Mount disk drives. (For the detailed procedure, see the next page.)

4. Repeat steps (2) and (3) as many times as the number of disk drives you want to install.



<b>(</b> CAUTION	Three disk drives that will serve as system disks always need to be installed on the slots 00, 01, and 02.
	When 3.5 inch disk drives are used, place system disk labels that come with the disk drives on the system disks to prevent operation errors. Also, place location labels on disk drives to prevent a wrong disk drive from being installed during drive replacement (when 3.5-inch hard disk drives are installed).
	Remove system disks from the unit one by one.



## Figure 3-11: Attaching Location Label

## Procedure for Removing a Dummy Carrier

Pull the eject lever on a dummy carrier until the angle is about 40 degrees.



3.5-Inch Dummy Carrier

2.5-Inch Dummy Carrier

Pull out the dummy carrier straight to the direction as the arrows in the following illustration shows. Put back the eject lever to the original position after removing the dummy carrier.



3.5-Inch Dummy Carrier

2.5-Inch Dummy Carrier

Figure 3-12: Removing Dummy Carrier



Do not dispose of the dummy carriers you removed.

There are two types of disk drive, 3-5-inch and 2.5-inch.

Each of them has three types, SAS drive, NL-SAS drive, and SSD.

The front label on a disk drive (shown by red circles on the figures below) indicates the type of the drive.



Figure 3-13: Disk Drive

## Procedure for Mounting a Disk Drive

 Pull the eject lever on a disk drive until the angle is about 40 degrees. The eject lever is closed by default on the disk drive. 2. Hold the disk drive steadily and insert it to the middle of the slot in the disk drive unit or a disk enclosure.



3.5-Inch Disk Drive

### 2.5-Inch Disk Drive

## Figure 3-14: Inserting Disk Drive

- 3. With the eject lever on the disk drive open, slowly insert the disk drive until it stops while holding the eject lever.
- 4. Press the eject lever into the disk drive to lock the drive.

## 3.3 Connection

## 3.3.1 Overview

Check the following before connecting the disk array unit:

- 1. Connection cables
  - To connect the disk array unit and a disk enclosure, be sure to use the cables that come with the disk enclosure or SAS cables specified by Bull.
  - (For FC) To connect a host bus adapter or FC switch on an application server to the disk array unit, be sure to use an FC cable specified by Bull.
  - (For 1Gbps iSCSI) To connect an NIC or switch on an application server to the disk array unit, be sure to use a LAN cable in the category 5e or over.
  - (For 10Gbps iSCSI) To connect an NIC or switch on an application server to the disk array unit, be sure to use an optical Ethernet cable (conforming to 10GBASE-SR).
  - To connect the disk array to power supply, use the power supply cables that come with the disk array unit.
- 2. Maximum cable length
  - a. FC cable

### Table 3-2: FC Cable Length

Host Interface	Max. Cable Length	Remarks
2 Gbps	300 m	Optical cable
4 Gbps	150 m	Optical cable
8 Gbps	50 m	Optical cable

b. iSCSI cable

### Table 3-3: iSCSI Cable Length

Host Interface	Max. Cable Length	Remarks
1 Gbps	100 m	1000BASE-T
10 Gbps	50 m (*1)	Optical cable
		Connector: LC-LC
		Core: 50 um
		Type: MMF/OM2 cable
		(All mode excitation bandwidth: 1500 MHz.km)



* 1. Connection of 50m or more is possible depending on the devices to be connected. For more information, contact the technical division of Bull.



To prevent a wrong cable from being connected during cable replacement at the system start or after a failure, attach the cable labels that come with units on to the cables.

## 3.3.2 Connecting a Disk Enclosure

If you have purchased a disk enclosure optionally, use SAS cables to connect the disk array unit and the disk enclosure.

For details about how to connect them, see Section 7.3.4: "Disk Enclosures".

## 3.3.3 Connecting an Application Server

## For FC Port Connection

Use FC cables, to connect an application server and host connection ports on the disk array unit.

The figure below shows an example of recommended connection, which is a redundant-paths configuration that works together with StoreWay Multipath.

To implement this recommended connection, two host bus adapters need to be installed on the application server.

Two FC cables are also required for connecting the disk array unit and the host bus adapters.



Figure 3-15: Connection Example



The dustproof covers on the host port on the controllers will be required for system relocation, etc. in the future. Do not dispose of the covers after removing them from the controllers.

Following is the procedure for connecting the disk array unit and the application server by using FC cables:

1. Check the power.

Make sure the power of the disk array unit is off.

2. Connect the application server.

Insert the connector on one end of an FC cable (LC-LC cable) into a host connection port (HPx) on the controller (CONT0 or CONT1) in the disk array unit until the connector clicks. The connectors on both ends of an FC cable have the same shape.

Connect the connecter on the other end of the FC cable to the connecter of a host bus adapter installed on the application server. In the same way, connect the other controller to the connector on another host bus adapter.



If you press an FC-cable connector hard when inserting it, the end face of the cable may be scratched and light output may be decreased, which may cause malfunction.

### For iSCSI Port Connection

See the "Preparation" section in one of the following sections:

- Section C.1: Initializing Application Server (on Windows)
- Section E.1: Initializing Application Server (on Linux)
- Section F.1: Initializing Application Server (on VMware)

## 3.3.4 Connecting LAN Cables

Use a LAN cable to connect the disk array unit, servers and the clients to a LAN. The disk array and the client must be connected to a LAN for initialization and monitoring of the disk array unit.

Use Storage Manager as software for initializing and monitoring the disk array unit. The Storage Manager is requisite for using the disk array unit.

Purchase shielded LAN cables and connect them to the management ports (LAN ports) on the controllers.



Figure 3-16: Example of LAN Cable Connection

Storage Manager Server can be connected to CONT0 and 1. When it is connected to either of them, connect it to CNT0 in general. It is recommended to employ a redundant configuration where an IP address is set for the LAN port on each controller and connection via an Ethernet hub is set.



LAN cable for connection with the client

- Use a shielded cross cable to directly connect the disk array unit and the client.
- Use shielded straight cables to connect the disk array unit and the client through a hub, etc.

## 3.3.5 Connecting Power Supply Cables



- Connect the power supply cables of the disk array unit after all other processes are finished.
  - Use the power supply cables that come with the disk array unit.
  - The disk array unit and a disk enclosure have a dual-power configuration to prevent the unit or the enclosure from being stopped when one of the power supplies fails. To use the disk array system, connect two power supply cables individually to the disk array unit and the disk enclosure for ensuring two lines to receive power.
  - Make sure to connect the cables to both the power supply PS0 and PS1.

Preliminary Checking: Press each of disk drives to make sure that they are not loose.

1. Connecting power supply cables of a disk enclosure

Confirm the AC switches are set to off and then connect the power supply cables of the disk enclosures. (Only for AC power supply.)

Check the power-supply cable connections of all the installed disk enclosures.

2. Connecting power supply cables of the disk array unit

Confirm the AC switches are set to off and then connect the power supply cables of the disk array unit. (Only for AC power supply.)

The AC operating mode is enabled by default so when the power supply cables are connected while power is being fed, the power supply is turned on. When power is not fed, connect the power supply cables and then start feeding power.

#### **Connection Procedure**

#### For AC Power Supply

- 1. Open the clamp part of the power supply cable clamp, set the power supply cable in the clamp and lightly lock the clamp part.
- 2. Move the clamp part in the direction shown by the arrow below close to the lowest part of the plug and then fix the clamp part steadily.



## Figure 3-17: AC Cable

A loosely-locked clamp part may cause the power supply cable to come off.

Fix the power supply cable clamp steadily at a location close to the lowest part of the power supply cable.

This chapter describes how to install Network Setting Tool, how to install the Storage Manager Agent Utility on application servers, how Storage Manager is provided, and how to start Storage Client.

In this chapter
"How Storage Manager is provided" on page 68
"Before Starting Storage Manager Client" on page 73
"Setup" on page 81
"Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility on Application Server" on page 101
"Starting Storage Manager Client" on page 102

## 4.1 How Storage Manager is provided

## 4.1.1 How Storage Manager is Provided and Its Configuration

Storage Manager, a disk array management software program, is provided in two types:

Storage Manager Express

Storage Manager Express allows for configuring and managing only a single target disk array. You can quickly start using Storage Manager Express through a Web browser on a client machine with no management server needed.

Storage Manager

Storage Manager Suite allows for centralized configuration and management of multiple disk arrays, including the old D/S series, by a single management server.

Storage Manager Suite also allows for integrated management of the entire system by working together with middleware products (such as WebSAM, ESMPRO, or SSC).

This document describes initialization and settings of a disk array using Storage Manager Express.



- Storage Manager Installation Guide
- Storage Manager User's Manual
- Storage Manager Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the OptimaX600 series

The descriptions in the rest of this chapter are based on the recommended configuration example shown in *Figure 4-1: Example of Recommended Configuration*.



Figure 4-1: Example of Recommended Configuration

## 4.1.2 The Operating Environment of Storage Manager Client

*Table 4-1* shows the operating environment of Storage Manager Client. A Web browser and Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed in the system before you start using Storage Manager Client.

Configuration	Description
Hardware	Machine on which one of the OSes in the next column run
	Blade series
	NovaScale series
	extreme computing series
	PC/AT compatibles
Operating System	Microsoft Windows XP Professional Edition (from without any Service Pack to Service Pack 3)
	Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows Vista Business (from without any Service Pack to Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1)
	Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate x64 (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1)
	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1)
	Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise x64 (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1)
	Microsoft Windows 7 Professional (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1)
	Microsoft Windows 7 Professional x64 (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (from without any Service Pack to Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (from without any Service Pack to Service Pack 2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)

## Table 4-1: Operating Environment of Storage Manager Client
Configuration	Description
Configuration	DescriptionMicrosoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2)Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Standard (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2) (*)Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1) (*)Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1) (*)Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Enterprise (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2) (*)Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 2) (*)Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (without any Service Pack and Service Pack 1) (*)Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5 to 5.7 (IA32/EM64T) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5 to 5.7 Advanced Platform (IA32/EM64T)(*) Products without Hyper-V are also supported. The Server Core installation ontion is not supported.
Web browser	<ul> <li>Windows</li> <li>Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 6 to 9 (32 bit version)</li> <li>*For Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, only Version 7 or later are supported.</li> <li>*For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, only Version 8 or later are supported.</li> <li>Linux</li> <li>Firefox 3.0, 3.5 and 3.6</li> </ul>
Java Runtime Environment (JRE)	<ul> <li>One of the following JREs (32 bit version) is necessary.</li> <li>From JRE 6 update 17 to 29</li> <li>See <i>Table 4-2</i> for information on combinations of supported JREs and OSes.</li> <li>When using Internet Explorer 9, be sure to use JRE 6 update or later.</li> </ul>
Memory	Windows 67 MB or more Linux 70 MB or more
Disk capacity	No program needs to be installed. Note that a maximum of 30 MB is used for reporting log files.
Display	XGA (resolution 1024 × 768) or greater

Table 1-1.	Operating	Environment	of Storago	Managor	Client	(Contd.)
	Operating		of Storage	wanayer	Client	Conta.)

The information above is the supported operating environment for the default settings of Storage Manager V7.

The latest information is available through PP Support Service, which is provided through registration before start of the service.

Operating System	JRE6 (32 bit version) * From JRE 6 update 17 to 29
Windows XP Professional Edition	Supported
Windows XP Professional x64 Edition	Supported
Windows Vista Business	Supported
Windows 7 Ultimate	Supported
Windows 7 Enterprise	Supported
Windows 7 Professional	Supported
Windows 7 Ultimate x64	Supported
Windows 7 Enterprise x64	Supported
Windows 7 Professional x64	Supported
Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition	Supported
Windows Server 2008 Standard	Supported
Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard	Supported
Windows Server 2008 Enterprise	Supported
Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise	Supported
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5	Supported
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5 Advanced Platform	Supported

Table 4-2: Operating Environment of Storage Manager Client (JRE and OS Combinations)



Do not use any unsupported OS and JRE combinations.



# 4.2 Before Starting Storage Manager Client

When you use Storage Manager Client (Web GUI) in a Windows environment, configure the Web browser (Internet Explorer) as described below. Once the configuration is complete, you do no need to configure the Web browser in subsequent startups of Storage Manager Client.

1. Follow the steps below to configure the disk array to be connected as "Trusted Sites."

(The following screenshot is for Internet Explorer 8 on Windows 7)

- a. From Control Panel, select Internet Options, and click the Security tab.
- b. Select the **Trusted sites** icon and click **Sites**.

General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
	-					
Select	a zone to v	iew or cha	ange securi	ty settings.		
			<b>C</b>			1-
				V		
	Internet	Loc	al intranet	Truste	d sites	Rest *
•		1.11.	10			
	This see	sites			Site	es
$\checkmark$	trust no	e contains t to damac	websites t	mat you mouter or		
	your file	s.	je your cor	ipater of		
	You hav	e websites	s in this zor	ne.		
Secu	rity level fo	r this zone	-			
Alle	owed levels	for this zo	one: All			
200	Med	lium				
4	F	Prompts be	efore down	loading potent	ially unsafe	
-		Insigned 4	ActiveX con	trols will not be	e downloade	d
-	-	shaighed 7	icuven con		L downloade	
	Enable Pr	otected M	ode (requi	res restarting I	internet Exp	lorer)
			Cust	tom level	Default	level
				Reset all zone	s to default	level

Figure 4-2: Internet Options Window

c. Enter the URL of the disk array to be connected (for example, http: the IP address (host name) of the disk array to be connected) in the Add this website to the zone box, and click Add.
 The Require server verification (https:) for all sites in this zone check box should be cleared.

Trusted sites	<b></b>
You can add and remove websit this zone will use the zone's sec	es from this zone. All websites in urity settings.
Add this website to the zone:	$\frown$
http://192.xx.xx.xx	Add
Websites:	
	Remove
1 D	
T TRequire server verification (https:) to	r all sites in this zone
	Close

Figure 4-3: Trusted Sites Window

- d. Click  $\boldsymbol{\mathsf{OK}}$  to close the window.
- 2. Follow the steps below to configure the security level of **Trusted sites**.
  - a. From Control Panel, select Internet Options, and click the Security tab.
  - b. Select the Trusted sites icon and click Custom level.



Figure 4-4: Internet Options Window

3. Select Enable under Run ActiveX controls and plug-ins.

urity Sett	tings - Trusted Sites Zone		
ettings			
	Run ActiveX controls and pl	ug-ins	
	Administrator approved		
	Disable		
•	Enable		
	Prompt		
1	Script ActiveX controls mark	ed safe for scripting*	
	Disable		
	Enable		
	Prompt		
Por Dou	wnloads		
2	Automatic prompting for file	downloads	
	Oisable		
	C Enable		
2	File download		
	O Disable		-
	C Enable		•
*Takes e	effect after you restart Inter	net Explorer	
eset cus	tom settings		
eset to:	Medium (default)	<b>•</b>	Reset
		ОК	Cancel

Figure 4-5: Security Settings Window

4. Click **OK** to close the window.



When you are using Internet Explorer Version 7 or later, do not enable Protected Mode of the Trusted sites.

When your environment is Windows, configure Java as well before you start using Storage Manager Client (Web GUI). Once the configuration is complete, you do not need to configure Java again in subsequent startups of Storage Manager Client.

Disable the auto update function of Java according to the following procedure:

(The example is based on Windows 7.)

1. Open the Java Control Panel.

Use Explorer and execute the following file located in the JRE installation folder. (In a Windows Vista or later environment or a Windows Server 2008 or later environment, right-click the icon to start the Web browser to select **Run as administrator**.)

```
C:\Program Files\Java\jre6\bin\javacpl.exe (default installation in the 32 bit version OS)
C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre6\bin\javacpl.exe (default installation in the 64 bit version)
```

 $\leq$ 

Alternatively, when you are using a 32-bit version of OS and if Java is in Control Panel, you can use it.

2. Click the Update tab and clear the Check for Updates Automatically check box.



Figure 4-6: Update Tab of Java Control Panel

3. Click **OK** to close the window.

Disable the next generation Java plug-in according to the following procedure.

(The example is based on Windows 7.)

1. Open Java Control Panel.

Use Explorer and execute the following file located in the JRE installation folder. (In a Windows Vista or later environment or a Windows Server 2008 or later environment, right-click the icon to start the Web browser to select **Run as administrator**.)

```
C:\Program Files\Java\jre6\bin\javacpl.exe (default installation in the 32 bit version OS)
```

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre6\bin\javacpl.exe (default installation in the 64 bit version)
```



Alternatively, when you are using a 32-bit version of OS and if Java is in Control Panel, you can use it.

2. Click the Advanced tab and clear the Enable the next-generation Java Plug-in (requires browser restart) check box.



Figure 4-7: Advanced Tab of Control Panel

3. Click **OK** to close the window.

## 4.3 Setup

## 4.3.1 Installing Network Setting Tool

This section describes how to install Network Setting Tool on the Storage Manager Client machine. Install Network Setting Tool according to the platform of your Storage Manage Client.

#### 4.3.1.1 For Windows

Use Storage Manager Setup to install Network Setting Tool.

Please prepare the CD-ROM for Optima3600 series. Follow the instruction on the screen to complete the installation.

Follow the steps below to use Storage Manager Setup.

- 1. Log in as Administrator.
- 2. Set the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the client.
- 3. Storage Manager Setup automatically starts. Follow the instructions on the screen to perform the installation.

Storage Manager Setup may not automatically start in some environments, in which case you need to start the following program in the CD-ROM.

\INSTALL\WINDOWS\ISMSETUP.EXE

4. Select Setup for OptimaX600 series and click Next.

Select Disk Array Type	
<u>R</u> ead me first	
Setup for OptimaX600 series	
Select this to install software	e required for setup and/or operation of OptimaX600 series
C Setup for Optima1500/2000	1/3000/5000/Others/FDA series
Select this to install software Optima1500/2000/3000/5	e required for setup and/or operation of 000/Others/FDA series
	×

Figure 4-8: Start Page of Setup

5. Select Setup as a disk array in Quick Install, and then click Next.

Select Installation Method	
Quick Install	
Select this to install the software required for OptimaX600 series initialization.	System configuration examples
Setup as a disk array	
Software necessary to a setup of a disk array	is installed and setup is carried out
	is installed and setup is carried out.
C Setup as a server	is installed and setup is called out.
<ul> <li>Sgtup as a server</li> <li>The utility which manages server information i</li> </ul>	is installed.
C Setup as a server The utility which manages server information i	is installed.
Setup as a server The utility which manages server information i Custom Install	is installed.

### Figure 4-9: Select Installation Method

6. Check the software to be installed and then click Next.

Storage Manager Setup		×
Installed software		
The software is installed. Check and "Next" click.		
JRE Storage Manager Network Setting Tool		
	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel

Figure 4-10: Confirm Software

7. Make sure to read all of the software license agreement. If you accept the agreement select I accept terms of the license agreement and then click Next. If you do not accept the agreement, you cannot use the software.

SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT The customer ("Customer") and Bull S.A.S. company ("Bu with respect to the Licensed Software provided in Section 1. Definitions "Licensed Software" shall mean Bull Storage Manager, in	ull'') hereby agree as follows hereunder.
The customer ("Customer") and Bull S.A.S. company ("Bu with respect to the Licensed Software provided in Section1 1. Definitions "Licensed Software" shall mean Bull Storage Manager, in	III'') hereby agree as follows hereunder.
<ol> <li>Definitions         "Licensed Software" shall mean Bull Storage Manager, in     </li> </ol>	
consists of the following three programs. a) "Server Program", which shall mean modules under a di b) "Business Server Program", which shall mean modules u ISMVOL; c) "Client Program", which shall mean modules under a dire	object code format, which rectory named ISMSVR; inder a directory named ectory named CLIENT.
O I accept terms of the license agreement	<u>P</u> rint
I do not accept terms of the license agreement	

#### Figure 4-11: License Agreement

8. Select where the software will be installed. If you want to install the software in the shown destination, click **Next**. If you want to install the software in a folder other than the shown destination, click **Browse** to select the folder you want to use.

Storage Manager Setup (Quick Install)	×
Choose Destination Location Select folder where setup will install files.	
To install to this folder, click Next.	
To install to a different folder, click Browse and select another folder.	
Destination Folder	
C:\Program Files\Bull StoreWay	Browse
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> >	Cancel

#### Figure 4-12: Choose Destination Location

9. Install the software as you are prompted by the instructions.



If you install JRE in this step, perform the JRE preparation described in *Section 4.2: "Before Starting Storage Manager Client"* 

10.Click **Next** to start Network Setting Tool.

Storage Manager Setup (Quick Install)			×
Start Storage Manager Network Se	tting Tool		
Click Next to start Storage Manager Network for IP address settings.	Setting Tool		
	/ Rack	Neut	Cancel
	< Dock		

#### Figure 4-13: Starting Network Setting Tool

11.Proceed to configuration of IP addresses of the disk array. See Section 4.3.2: "Configuring IP Addresses by Using Network Setting Tool".

Configure the IP addresses of the disk array during the installation. The IP addresses consist of the IP addresses of controllers, BMC addresses of controllers and a floating address. If Storage Manager Client is used, an IP address should be set to each of controllers.



When the installation is started from by selecting Setup for OptimaX600 series in Storage Manager Setup, JRE and .NET Framework, which are necessary for Network Setting Tool and Storage Manager Client (Web GUI), must be installed.

#### 4.3.1.2 For Linux

Follow the steps below to install Network Setting Tool.

Please prepare the CD-ROM or the Optima3600 series.

- 1. Log in as root user.
- 2. Set the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the client.

If you cannot use the CD-ROM in your environment, send the iSMnetconfig.rpm file from another server.

- 3. Mount the CD-ROM
  - Create a mount directory (Example: /cdrom)
  - □ Use the mount command.

```
mount -r /dev/cdrom /cdrom
```

4. Install JRE.

If it is already installed on your machine, the installation is not necessary.

Copy the installer to a directory you want to use (for example, /tmp).

```
cp -r /cdrom/JRE/LINUX/jre-6u21-linux-i586-rpm.bin /tmp/.
```

- Run the installer you have copied.
  - /tmp/ jre-6u21-linux-i586-rpm.bin
- 5. Use the rpm command for the installation.

rpm -ivh /cdrom/NETCONFIG/LINUX/iSMnetconfig.rpm

6. The following message is shown when the installation is complete.

Installation of iSMnetconfig was successful.

7. Unmount the CD-ROM. Use the unmount command.

umount /cdrom

- 8. Register JRE with the Web browser (Firefox) according to the following procedure.
  - a. Exit Firefox.
  - b. If any JREs have been registered with the plugins directory of Firefox, delete them. (You cannot register JRE of different versions at a time.)

Remove the symbolic links "javaplugin-oji.so" and "libnpjp2.so" from /usr/lib/firefox-<version>/plugins (for the default settings).

- c. Create a symbolic link to JRE in the plugins directory of Firefox.
  - Run the following command with the /usr/lib/firefox-<version>/plugins (for the default settings) as a current directory.

ln -s usr/java/jre<version>/plugin/i386/ns7/libjavaplugin_oji.so (for Firefox 3.5 or earlier)

ln -s usr/java/jre<version>/lib/i386/libnpjp2.so (for Firefox 3.6 or later)



## 4.3.2 Configuring IP Addresses by Using Network Setting Tool

#### 4.3.2.1 Overview

Network addresses are set to a disk array for monitoring from Storage Manager.

After connecting the disk array (device) to physically the same network where the machine on which Network Setting Tool has been installed (i.e. the network not beyond a router), configure IP addresses having the same segment as the machine on which Network Setting Tool has been installed by referring to the example shown below.

#### For example:

The address of the machine on which Network Setting Tool is installed is 192.168.0.20/24.



#### Figure 4-14: Connect Disk Array - Example

- * 1. IP addresses have the same segment as the machine on which Network Setting Tool has been installed.
- * 2. When the disk array and the Storage Manager Client are operated on different segments, configure IP addresses by referring to the example shown above and then move the disk array. When you move the disk array, make sure to remember the gateway address settings.

#### 4.3.2.2 Configuration

In a Windows environment, Network Setting Tool is automatically started after Network Setting Tool is installed by using Storage Manager Setup.

To configure manually, click Start > All Programs > Storage Manager Network Initialization Tool > Network Setting Tool to run Network Setting Tool.

In a Linux environment,

1. Run the iSMinitool command.

In star Dist. Assess			
elect a Disk Array			
et IP address of disk array.			
elect a disk array to set IP :	addresses a	nd click Set.	1
erial Number	Status	IP Address (Controller #1)	IP Address (Controller #0)
0000000991050240	not set		
- 0000000991050243	nutset		
			Oot
			Set
			Set
			Set
	4 Vinteral accord		<u>S</u> et
f the target disk array is no	t listed, confi	rm the disk array condition and cl	Set
f the target disk array is no	t listed, confi	rm the disk array condition and cl	Set
f the target disk array is no	t listed, confi	rm the disk array condition and cl	Set
f the target disk array is no	t listed, confl	rm the disk array condition and cl	Set lick Refresh Refresh
f the target disk array is no	t listed, confli	rm the disk array condition and cl	Set lick Refresh Refresh
(the target disk array is no	t listed, confi	rm the disk array condition and cl	Set

Figure 4-15: Select a Disk Array - Start up

2. Click **Refresh** when Network Setting Tool is started.

I A DISK MILAW			and the second se
or o man ratoy			
-	and the state	and the second s	and the second se
IP address of disk array.			
ect a disk array to set IP a	addresses ar	nd click Set.	Les contraction of the second
00000000001050240	Status	IP Address (Controller #1)	IP Address (Controlic, 20)
0000000991050243	not set		
			Set
			Set
			Set
na tarmat diek array ie na	t listart confi	m the disk array condition and c	Set
ne target disk array is no	t listed, confir	rm the disk array condition and c	Set
ne target disk array is no	t listed, confir	rm the disk array condition and c	Set
ne target disk array is no	t listed, confir	m the disk array condition and c	Set lick Refresh.
te target disk array is no	t listed, confir	rm the disk array condition and c	Set lick Refresh.

Figure 4-16: Select a Disk Array

Disk arrays detected through search are displayed.

"not set" is shown for Status for disk arrays for which network settings will be performed for the first time.

3. Select the target disk array from the list and click Set.

If the Optima X600 series has been installed and IP addresses have been configured, "finished" is shown in the Status column. For details about information shown for the Status column, see *Table 4-3*.

Status	Description
Displayed information	Disk array status
not set	Disk array has just been installed
	The disk array is not monitored by Storage Manager because the network settings have not been done.
	IP addresses must be configured by using Network Setting Tool
finished	IP addresses have been configured The disk array can be monitored by Storage Manager.

Table 4-3: Initialization Status of Disk Array

4. Configure the network addresses to allow monitoring the disk array by Storage Manager.

work Settings							-
ter following settings a	nd click S	et. Manar	aer client r	an connect to the disk array r	egardless	of cor	troller
dress (recommended)	, otoraye	marray	jer chern c	an connect to the disk alray i	egaruless	5 01 001	noner
loating Address							
P Address							
Controller #1 (Left side	of Back P	anel)		Controller #0 (Right side	e of Back I	Panel)	
P Address				IP Address			
Subnet Mas <u>k</u>				Subnet Mask			
Gateway Address				Gateway Address		- 2	
B <u>M</u> C Address				BMC Address			
BMC Subn <u>e</u> t		•		BMC Subnet			
BMC <u>G</u> ateway				BMC Gateway			
Ena <u>b</u> le BMC Address	settings	Manage	ement Por	t	Manag	gement	Port
E	000	00			00000		
.E.,					ü .		
	ontroller	#1	Re	Controlle	er #0		

Figure 4-17: Network Settings

- 5. Configure a floating address for the disk array and the network address, BMC address, and floating address for each of disk array controllers. When the settings are configured for a controller not connected by a LAN cable, monitoring is disabled.
- 6. Check that the disk array is connected to the client over the LAN and then specify an IP address, a subnet mask, a gateway address, a BMC address, a BMC subnet mask and a BMC gateway address for each of the controllers. IP addresses from 10.1.0.0 through 10.1.0.255 (subnet mask 255.255.255.0) and from 10.2.0.0 through 10.2.0.255 (subnet mask 255.255.255.0) and 0.0.0.0 are reserved. These IP addresses and subnet mask can not be specified. Specify IP addresses for the controller other than these IP addresses and that allow communication with the client. If no gateway address is specified, enter 0.0.0.0

Floating address is an IP address that can be set to a disk array in addition to the network addresses configured for each controller. Setting a floating address allows you to access a disk array while controllers remain transparent.

It is recommended to configure a floating address for ease of management.

When a floating address is specified, the following conditions must be satisfied for network addresses of controllers and the floating address.

- IP addresses of Controller 0 and Controller 1 belong to the same segment and an unused IP address of the same segment as the controllers is assigned to the floating address.
- IP addresses of Controller 0 and Controller 1 belong to different segments and an IP address that does not belong to those segments and does not have any conflict with other existing segments is assigned to the floating address.
- 7. When all the required information is entered, click **Set**. The dialog box for confirmation is displayed.

iSM		×
Confirm Network settings and click	Set.	
n seangs are meeneer, storage ma	nuger can not control the alon anay.	
Floating Address		
IP Address:0.0.0.0		
Controller #1	Controller #0	
IP Address:192.168.0.12	IP Address:192.168.0.11	
Subnet Mask:255.255.255.0	Subnet Mask:255.255.255.0	
Gateway Address:0.0.0.0	Gateway Address:0.0.0.0	
BMC Address:0.0.0.0	BMC Address:0.0.0.0	
BMC Subnet:0.0.0.0	BMC Subnet:0.0.0.0	
BMC Gateway:0.0.0.0	BMC Gateway:0.0.0.0	
Ort		
<u>s</u> et	Cancel	

#### Figure 4-18: Network Setting Tool - Confirmation Dialog Box

- 8. Click Set to set the specified values to the disk array.
- 9. Click **Cancel** to change the settings.



## 4.3.3 Setting a Time Zone of the Disk Array

This section describes how to set a time zone of the disk array.

#### 4.3.3.1 For Windows

Use Storage Manager Setup to configure the time zone settings.

Storage Manager Setup is automatically started when you set the Storage Manager Express Setup and Utility CD-ROM, and it allows you to perform the settings as prompted. Depending on your environment, it may not start automatically, in which case, run the following program in the CD-ROM.

\INSTALL\WINDOWS\ISMSETUP.EXE

Follow the steps below by using Storage Manager Setup.

1. After you configure IP addresses as described in *Section 4.3.2: "Configuring IP Addresses by Using Network Setting Tool"*, the page to set a time zone appears.

Select Disk Array Type	
Sciect Disk Anay Type	
<u>R</u> ead me first	
Setup for OptimaX600 series	8
Select this to install software	
C Setup for Optima1500/2000	0/3000/5000/Others/FDA series
Select this to install softwar	e required for setup and/or operation of
Uptima1500/2000/3000/5	JUUU/Uthers/FDA series

Figure 4-19: Select Disk Array Type

2. Select Setup for Optima X600 series and click Next. The Select Installation Method page appears.

System configuration exampl	les
stalled and setup is carried out. talled.	
s	System configuration exampl talled and setup is carried out. alled.

Figure 4-20: Select Installation Method

Storage Manager Setup (Quick Install)	
Setting in a time zone	
When setting a time zone, a disk array is restarted	
Do you want to setting?	
C No	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Figure 4-21: Setting in a Time Zone

- 3. To set a time zone, select **Yes** and click **Next**. By default, Asia and (GMT +9) Tokyo time zone is set. If you want to skip the setting, select **No**.
- 4. When you select **Yes**, the following page appears.

Storage Manager Setup (C	(uick Install)			×
Setting in a time zon	e sector and			
Select Time Zone				
C	)isk Array	000000991050240		•
т	ïme Zone	Asia		•
		(GMT+9)Tokyo		•
			<u>S</u> et Ti	ime Zone
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure 4-22: Setting in a Time Zone - Select Time Zone

- 5. Select the Time Zone and click **Set Time Zone**. Click **Next**.
- 6. Click **Finish** on the setup completion page. The Web browser is started. See Section 4.5.2: *"Starting Storage Manager Client"*.

Storage Manager Setup (Qu	ick Install)	×
	Quick Installation is now complete.	
1	Click Finish and Web browser will be launched. Then do followings if you want to initialize the disk array.:	
	<ol> <li>Enter user name and password in the login window. Refer to the manual for default account information.</li> <li>Start Initialization Wizard to initialize the M series disk array.</li> </ol>	
	Note 1. A Security Warning window may come up on connecting to Storage Manager Server. Make sure if the publisher is "NEC Corporation" and then click "Yes".	5
	<ol> <li>Windows Security Alert window may come up to tell the brow you are using such as Internet Explorer has been blocked or connecting with Storage Manager Server. In this case, click [unblock] button or create an exception for the browser in Windows Firewall from control panel in advance.</li> </ol>	wser n
	< Back Finish Cano	cel

Figure 4-23: Setup Completion

#### 4.3.3.2 For Linux

Follow the steps below and use the time zone setting command to set a time zone of the disk array.

- 1. Log in as root user.
- 2. Set the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the client.
- 3. Mount the CD-ROM.
  - Create a mount directory (Example: /cdrom).
  - Use the mount command for mounting mount -r /dev/cdrom /cdrom

4. Run the time zone setting command (iSMtzconfig) to obtain the time zone. Run the following program in the CD-Rom for the time setting command.

TZCONFIG/LINUX/iSMtzconfig

```
# /tmp/TZCONFIG/LINUX/iSMtzconfig show
Serial Number Time Zone information
0000000991050240 Asia/Tokyo (GMT+9)
iSMtzconfig: 001 Command has completed successfully.
```

5. Check the result of running the command.

Confirm that the message number 001 is reported and the time zone of the disk array is shown after running the time setting command.

6. To change the time zone, run the time setting command.

```
# /tmp/TZCONFIG/LINUX/iSMtzconfig set -serial 000000991050240 -zone
Asia/Tokyo -reboot
Serial Number Time Zone information
0000000991050240 Asia/Tokyo (GMT+9)
iSMtzconfig: 001 Command has completed successfully.
```

7. Check the result of running the command.

Confirm that the message number 001 is reported and the time zone of the disk array is shown after running the time setting command.



# 4.4 Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility on Application Server

This section describes how to install the Storage Manager Agent Utility on an application server.

For details about the installation procedure, see either of the following depending on the platform of the application server.

- For Windows application servers, see Section B.1: "Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility".
- For Linux application servers, see Section D.1: "Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility".

# 4.5 Starting Storage Manager Client

This section describes how to start up Storage Manager Client.

## 4.5.1 Before Starting Storage Manager Client

Before you use Storage Manager Client (Web GUI) in a Windows environment, configure the Web browser (Internet Explorer) and Java. For details see *Section 4.2: "Before Starting Storage Manager Client"*.

## 4.5.2 Starting Storage Manager Client

Start the Web browser. (In a Windows Vista or later or Windows Server 2008 or later environment, right-click the icon to start the Web browser to select **Run as administrator**.)

Start up the Storage Manager Client by entering the host name or the IP address (floating address, or if no floating address is assigned, the IP address of Controller 0 or Controller 1) of the disk array to be connected in the address bar of the Web browser.

#### For example:

http://host name (or http://IP address)



If you enter the IP address in the IPv6 format, the IP address must be enclosed in square brackets [], in which case, you cannot use Internet Explorer 6.

🥖 Storage Man	ager Express - Windows	Internet Explorer		
<b>O -</b>	e		✓ 4 × bing	+ ٩
🚖 Favorites	🏉 Storage Manager	Express		
	User Name Password Login	: sysadmin : sysadmin : Save User №ame : Save Password . Qlear		
Done			Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	📲 🔻 🔍 100% 🔻

Figure 4-24: Log On Screen

Parameter	Description
User Name	Allows to enter user name.
Save User Name	Allows to save the entered user name.
Password	Allows to enter a password.
Save Password	Allows to save the entered password.

Perform the following steps to logon to Storage Manager client:

- 1. Enter "sysadmin" in the **User Name** box.
- 2. Enter "sys123" (default value) in the **Password** box.



When you click **Options**, the login window is expanded as shown in *Figure 4-25: Log On Screen* (*Expanded*), which allows you to configure the behavior after login.



#### Figure 4-25: Log On Screen (Expanded)

Parameter	Description
Save Messages to a Log File	Allows to saves messages to a log file
Display Maintenance Status	If this option is selected, an error/warning in underlying component will be escalated to higher layer even if there is no affect to the operation.
Logical Disk View Order	Select <b>Number</b> to view the logical disks sorted in logical disk number order.
	Select Name (OS + Logical Disk Name) to view the logical disks sorted in OS Type and logical disk name order.

d. Click **Login** to open the main screen.



Figure 4-26: Main Screen
# Chapter 5 Initializing a Disk Array (FC)

This chapter describes how to initialize a disk array configured for FC connection.

In this chapter
"Overview" on page 108
"Collecting Host Information From Application Servers" on page 109
"Initialization by Storage Manager" on page 111
"Checking Connection from Application Servers" on page 146

# 5.1 Overview

To set FC connection first in a disk array configured for both FC and iSCSI connections, do the procedure in this chapter and then see *Chapter 6, "Initializing a Disk Array (iSCSI)"* to make the settings.

To set iSCSI connection first, see *Chapter 6, "Initializing a Disk Array (iSCSI)"* to make settings and then do the procedure in this chapter.



To initialize a disk array configured for iSCSI connection, see *Chapter 6, "Initializing a Disk Array (iSCSI)"*.

The initialization consists of:

#### 1. Collecting host information

Collect host information from the application server.

For details about the procedure, see *Section 5.2: "Collecting Host Information From Application Servers"*.

#### 2. Initializing the disk array by using the initialization wizard

Use the initialization wizard to make the basic settings of the disk array. For details about the procedure, see *Section 5.3.1: "Initialization Wizard"*.

#### 3. Binding a pool

Bind a pool in the disk array.

For details about the procedure, see Section 5.3.2: "Binding a Pool".

#### 4. Binding a hot spare

Bind a hot spare. This step is not required unless a hot spare is bound. For details about the procedure, see *Section 5.3.3: "Binding a Hot Spare"*.

#### 5. Binding logical disks

Bind logical disks.

For details about the procedure, see Section 5.3.4: "Binding Logical Disks".

## 6. Collection and registration of host information

Collect host information and register it with the disk array.

For details about the procedure, see Section 5.3.5: "Collecting Host Information"

## 7. Assigning the logical disks to the application servers

Assign the created logical disk to the application servers.

For details about the procedure, see Section 5.3.6: "Assigning Logical Disks".

## 8. Checking connection from the application servers

Check that the application server to which the logical disks have been assigned can access the disk array.

For details about the procedure, see Section 5.4: "Checking Connection from Application Servers".

# 5.2 Collecting Host Information From Application Servers

This section describes collection of host information from application servers.

Host information can be automatically collected if the OS used on the application servers is only Windows and servers used in the system are all new (servers that have not begun operating).

When there is any Linux (RHEL5 or later or SLES10 or later) application server and the servers used in the system are all new (servers that have not begun operating), host information can be collected through the disk array.

To collect host information when the disk array is installed in a system that has already begun operating or there is any application server on a different operating system, see Section B.2.1: *"Collecting Host Information by Using File Output"* for a Windows environment, or Section D.2.1: *"Collecting Host Information by Using File Output"* for a Linux environment.

# 1. Configurations where host information can be collected automatically or through a disk array

When the OS of new servers to be connected by FC cables is Windows and a disk array is newly installed, host information can be automatically collected by using the Storage Manager Host Agent Service function and FC connection paths between the disk array and Windows servers. When the OS of new servers to be connected by FC cables is Linux (RHEL5 or later or SLES10 or later) and a disk array is newly installed, host information can be collected through the disk array.

For details about the setting, see Section 5.3.5: "Collecting Host Information".

To collect host information without connecting FC cables in one of the configurations above, see Section B.2.1: "Collecting Host Information by Using File Output" for a Windows environment, or Section D.2.1: "Collecting Host Information by Using File Output" for a Linux environment.





# 2. Collecting host information by using files reported by the host information collection command

When a disk array is installed in a system that has already begun operating or any of the application servers to be connected by FC cables is on an OS other than Windows or Linux (RHEL5 or later or SLES10 or later), use the host information collection command to report files. Registering the reported files allows assigning the application server to created logical disks. For details about how to register reported files, see Section B.2.2: "Registering Host Information by Using File Output" for a Windows environment, or Section D.2.2: "Registering Host Information by Using File Output" for a Linux environment.





## 5.2.1 Collecting Host Information From Application Server

To make settings for collecting host information automatically or through a disk array, see <u>Section</u> 5.3.5: "Collecting Host Information".

For details about how to collect host information, see one of the following depending on the platform of the application server:

- For a Windows application server, see Section B.2: "Collecting/Registering Host Information on Application Server".
- For a Linux application server, see Section D.2: "Collecting/Registering Host Information on Application Server".

# 5.3 Initialization by Storage Manager

# 5.3.1 Initialization Wizard

## 5.3.1.1 Overview

Use the initialization wizard to make the basic settings of a disk array.

Operations to be performed on the initialization wizard are:

- Set the disk array subsystem name Change and/or confirm a disk array name.
- Set time Set time by configuring the NTP server, or manually.
- Unlock licenses
   Unlock licenses.
- Host connection port parameters (FC) Set the host connection port.
- Port mode switching Change the port mode.

## 5.3.1.2 Starting the initialization wizard

Click **Configuration** and **Initialization** on the left pane to open the menu. Then click **Start** to start the initialization wizard.

	2
Monitor	8
Screen	
Screen Operation	0
Fault Information	
Power Consumption	
Configuration	8
Initialization	8
Start	
User Setting	
Pool	0
Hot Spare	0
Logical Disk	0
Host	0
Disk Array	0

## Figure 5-3: Starting Initialization Wizard

Before the initialization starts, the following confirmation message appears.



Click **Yes** to start the initialization wizard.

#### 5.3.1.3 Welcome to Initialization Wizard

When the initialization wizard starts, perform the settings as prompted.



Figure 5-4: Welcome to Initialization Wizard

#### Click Next.

# 5.3.1.4 Set Disk Array Subsystem Name

You can change the disk array name.

Set Disk Array Subsystem Name Port Mode Switching > Finish	>	Set Time > Unlock License	> Но	st connectio	on port paramet	ers (FC)	>
Set Disk Array Subsystem Name.							
Product ID	:	iStorage M300					
Serial Number	:	000000942090000					
Disk Array Subsystem Name	:	diskarrayl					
New Disk Array Subsystem Name	:	diskarrayl					
		< Book		Next. >	Cancel	Hel	n
		- Back		MEAC >	Cancer	Lei	P

# Figure 5-5: Setting Disk Array Subsystem Name

Parameter	Description
Product ID	Displays the product ID of the disk array.
Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the disk array.

Parameter	Description
Disk Array Subsystem Name	Displays a name to identify the disk array subsystem.
New Disk Array Subsystem Name	By default, displays the current disk array subsystem name. To change this name, enter a new disk array subsystem name.

Perform the following steps to change a disk array name:

- 1. Enter a new name in the New Disk Array Subsystem Name box.
- 2. Confirm the name and click Next.

## 5.3.1.5 Set Time

Set Disk Array Subsystem Name > Set Time > Unlock License > Host connection port parameters (FC) >
Port Mode Switching > Finish
State
Current time : Aug 17, 2011 10:20:27 AM
NTP server : Not synchronized
Select a time setting method.
Synchronize the time with the NTP server.
🔘 Set the time manually.
O Don't set the time now.
Explanation
If you select "Set the time manually" while the time is synchronized with the NTP server, synchronization with the NTP server is cancelled.
< Back Next > Cancel Help

## Figure 5-6: Set Time

Parameter	Description
State	Displays the date and time currently set for the disk array and the status of synchronization with the NTP server appear.
Synchronize the time with the NTP server.	Select this option to move on to the NTP setting page.
Set the time manually.	Select this option to move on to the manual time setting page.
Don't set the time now.	Select this option to move on to the step to unlock license without setting time.

To configure a time using NTP, select Synchronize the time with the NTP server and click Next.



For the procedure when the **Set the time manually** option is selected, see *Storage Manager Software Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the M Series.* 

Set Time - NTP server

Configure the NTP settings.

Port Hode Switching > Finish  Setthe IP addresses with the NTP server.  NTP server  IP version IPve  IP version IPve  IP version IPve  IP version IPve  Keplanation  You can specify up to three NTP servers.  Automation Section S	Set Disk Array Su	ubsystem Name > Set Time	> Unlo	ock License	> Hos	t connectio	on port paramete	ers (FC)	>
Set the IP addresses with the NTP server.  NTP server  I version IPv4  I address  NTP server  IP version IPv6  IP address  NTP server  IP version IPv4  IP address  .  Explanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.  Keylanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.  Keylanation Keylana	Port Mode Switchi	ing > Finish					<b>F</b>		
NTP server I > version IV4 I > address II > version IV6 I > version IV6 I > version IV4 I > version IV4 I > version IV4 Replanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.	Set the IP address	ses with the NTP server.							
IP version IPv4 • IP address NTP server IP address NTP server IP version IPv4 • IP address Explanation You can specify up to three NTP servers. $ = \frac{1}{10000000000000000000000000000000000$	NTP server								
IP address	IP version	IPv4 👻							
NTP server IP version IPv6 . IP address . NTP server IP version IPv4 . IP address Explanation You can specify up to three NTP servers. Vou can specify up to three NTP servers.	IP address	· · ·							
IP version IPvé • IP address NTP server IP address Suplanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.	NTP server								
IP address NTP server IP version IPv4 T a Sxplanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.	IP version	IPv6 👻							
NTP server IP version IPv4 • IP address · · · Explanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.	IP address								
IP version IPv4 IP address Explanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.	NTP server								
IP address Explanation You can specify up to three NTP servers.	IP version	IPv4 🗸							
Explanation You can specify up to three MTP servers.	IP address								
Tou can specify up to three NTP servers.	Explanation								
< Back Next > Cancel Help	You can speci	fy up to three NTP servers.							
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
< Back Next > Cancel Help									
				< Back		Jext ≻	Cancel	Help	<b>,</b>

# Figure 5-7: Set Time - Setting NTP Server

Parameter	Description
IP Address	Specify an IP address of the NTP server.

To set NTP server, enter the required information and click Next.

## 5.3.1.6 Unlock License

Set Disk Array Subsystem Name > Set	Time > Unlock License > Host connection port parameters (FC) >
Port Mode Switching > Finish	
1: Notify unlocked licenses.	
Hide unlocked license keys	
Application completion Application	history
License Key	Product
2: Unlock License.	
If it is necessary to unlock feature	es, enter the license key and click Add.
- License kev :	
-	Add
To delete e ligense key, selegt it	from the list below and click Delete
- License key list -	Tom the 1190 below and click belote.
nicense ney 1150	
License Key	Product
License Key	Product Delete

Unlocks the licenses of the disk array.

# Figure 5-8: Unlocking License

Parameter	Description
Hide unlocked license keys	Click this button to hide unlocked license keys.
Application completion	Displays the licenses which are currently unlocked.
Application history	Displays history of unlocked licenses, deleted licenses, and expired licenses.
License key	Enter a license key and click <b>Add</b> to register the key with the <b>License key list</b> .
Add	Click this button to register the entered License key with the License key list.

•

Parameter	Description
Licence key list	Displays a list of entered license keys.
Delete	Click this button to remove the selected license keys from the license key list.

To unlock the licenses, enter all the license keys to be unlocked and click Next.

# 5.3.1.7 Host Connection Port Parameters (FC)

Set the host connection port for the disk array supporting FC.

t Disk Arraj	y Subsystem Name > <u>Set Time</u>	> <u>Unlock Licen</u>	<u>se</u> > Host conn	ection port parameters (FC) >
rt mode Swi et port settin	tening > Finish			
e pore oouni	30.			
Number	Port name	Platform	Data rate	Server connection type
00h-00h	20000011223344550000	Windows (WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
00h-01h	20000011223344550001	Windows (WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
00h-02h	20000011223344550002	Windows(WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
00h-03h	20000011223344550003	Windows(WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
01h-00h	20000011223344550100	Windows(WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
01h-01h	20000011223344550101	Windows(WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
01h-02h	20000011223344550102	Windows(WN)	Auto	Auto negotiation
01h-03h	20000011223344550103abc	Windows(WN)	8Gbps	Auto negotiation
				Edit
00	01h-03h 01h-02h 01h-01h 01	uh-00h	00h-03h 00h-02l	h 00h-01h 00h-00h
	Controller #1	Rear view	Control	ler#0
		< Ba	ck Next >	Cancel Help

Parameter	Description
Port list	Select the port you want to set.
Edit button	A dialog box is displayed that lets you edit the settings of the selected port.

# Figure 5-9: Host Port Connection Parameters (FC)

# Edit dialog

Setting		
Port number	:	01h-03h
Port name	:	20000011223344550103
Platform	:	
Data rate	:	Auto 🚽
Server connection type	:	Auto negotiation 👻
Switch ID (Oh-7dh)	:	lf 🔶 h
Port type	:	Host port
OK		Cancel Help

# Figure 5-10: Edit Dialog

Parameter	Description
Port number	Unique port number
Port name	Specify the name to be assigned to the port.
Platform	Specify the platform of the host to be connected.
Data rate	Specify the value corresponding to the data transfer rate of the HBA or HUB.
Server connection type	Specify the connection topology between the disk array and the host.
	Automatic negotiation:
	The connection type is automatically negotiated.
	FC-AL:
	Select this when connecting the host connection port and the application server directly over an FC cable or when using a loop topology FC switch.
	FC switch connection (Fabric):
	Select this when using an FC switch other than a loop topology FC switch.
Switch ID	Specify the value of the switch for the port. The specifiable value range is 00h to 7dh.
	When connecting multiple disk arrays in a loop topology FC switch configuration, make sure that the value of each switch is unique.
Port type	Select the port type. Select the host port or data migration port. This setting is displayed only when the data migration function is usable.

Clicking **OK** applies the change of settings to the list.

When you click **Next** after changing the port settings as needed, the port settings are made.

### 5.3.1.8 Port Mode Switching

You can change the FC port mode of the disk array.

Set Disk Array	Subsystem Name > <u>Unlo</u>	ock License	> <u>Host connec</u>	ction port	parameters (FC)	>
Port Mode Switch	hing > Finish					
Select ports to ch	lange mode.					
- Port List -			( Number of Po	orts : 8	Number of selec	ted Ports : 0 )
Port Number	Port Name	Mode Type	Configuration	n Lock U	Jnselectable Reas	on
00h-00h	20000011223344550000	WWN				
00h-01h	20000011223344550001	WWN				
00h-02h	20000011223344550002	WWN				
00h-03h	20000011223344550003	WWN				
01h-00h	20000011223344550100	WWN				
01h-01h	20000011223344550101	WWN				
01h-02h	20000011223344550102	WWN				
01h-03h	20000011223344550103	WWN				
	o wu	N Mode		🔘 Port 1	Mode	
	Change Al	11	[	Change S	Selected	
			< Back	Next	> Cance	l Help

#### Figure 5-11: Port Mode Switching Screen

#### (a) Port List view

The Port List view lets you check the information about the disk array ports. A port number is expressed in the format of "director number-port number". The following items are displayed. Port Number

Port Name

## Mode

WWN: Port in the WWN mode

Port: Port in the Port mode.

Configuration lock

Lock: Locked port

(Empty): Port not locked

Unselectable Reason

The following items are hidden by default.

Host

To display any of these items, right-click the item name and set **Display** to the relevant item.

## (b) WWN Mode and Port Mode radio buttons

WWN Mode: Changes the mode of the port to the WWN mode.

Port Mode: Changes the mode of the port to the port mode.

## (c) Change All button

If you click this button, all the ports are changed to the mode selected with **WWN Mode** or **Port Mode**. In this case, you do not need to select a port from the port list. However, you cannot change the mode by using this button if there are any ports locked by the port configuration lock/unlock function. You cannot change to the port mode if the configuration lock function confirms that any target application server is in operation. Stop all the target application servers before performing this operation.

## (d) Change Selected button

If you select a port and then click this button, the selected port is changed to the mode selected with **WWN Mode** or **Port Mode**. You can select multiple ports in the port list if they are in the same mode. When a confirmation screen is displayed for checking the settings in advance, check the current mode of the port and the mode you are changing to. However, you cannot change the mode of a port locked by the port configuration lock/unlock function. You cannot change to the port mode if the configuration lock function confirms that any target application server is in operation. Stop all the target application servers before performing this operation.

## 5.3.1.9 Finish Initialization Wizard

Confirm that the initialization is finished.

Set Disk Array Subsystem Name > Set Time > Unlock License > Host connection port parameters (FC) > Port Mode Switching > Finish
The basic disk array setting is now complete.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind pool
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind Hot Information (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 5-12: Finish Initialization Wizard

Parameter	Description
Bind pool	When you click this hyperlink, the <b>Pool Bind</b> page appears for starting pool binding.

To move on to pool binding, click **Bind pool**.



# 5.3.2 Binding a Pool

Perform basic settings for binding a pool.

## 5.3.2.1 Pool Bind

Se Pool Bind		
Pool Bind > Confirmation >	Completion	
1: Click Show pool list to see the	pools that have been bound.	
Show pool list		
2: Select the type of physical dis	iks that configure a pool.	
Physical disk type	SAS 🔹	
3: Select RAID type.		
RAID type RAID6/60(4+PQ	) 🗸	
4: Specify the number of physica	al disks that configure the pool and their capacity.	
Auto disk selection	Number of physical disks (6-10) 6 (*) Physical disk capacity 266GB •	
Manual disk selection	Select physical disks	
Calculate pool capacity		
Total capacity of the pool	: 0 GB	
	< Back Next > Cancel	Help

# Figure 5-13: Pool Bind

Parameter	Description
Show pool list	Click <b>Show pool list</b> to see the list of existing pools. Click <b>Close pool list</b> to hide the pool list.
Physical disk type	Select the type of physical disks that configure a pool.
RAID type	Select the RAID type of the pool.

Parameter	Description
Auto disk selection	Specify the number of physical disks to be used from the <b>Number of physical disks</b> and the capacity per physical disk from <b>Physical disk capacity</b> .
	The selectable numbers of physical disks are:
	RAID6(4+PQ): 6 disks or more
	RAID6(8+PQ): 10 disks or more
	RAID5(2+P): 3 disks or more
	RAID5(4+P): 5 disks or more
	RAID5(8+P): 9 disks or more
	RAID-TM: 3 disks or more
	RAID1: 2 disks or more
Manual disk selection	Select this option and click <b>Select physical disks</b> to manually select physical disks to be used for a pool.
Calculate pool capacity	Click this button to see an estimated capacity of a pool in <b>Total</b> capacity of the pool. When Physical disk type, RAID type, Number of physical disks, Physical disk capacity is changed, there is possibility that "calculating" is displayed temporarily under <b>Total capacity of the pool.</b>

Perform the following steps to bind a pool:

- 1. Select the type of physical disk from Physical disk type.
- 2. Select the type of RAID from the **RAID type** drop-down list menu.
- 3. Select the number of physical disk that configure the pool and their capacity using either **Auto disk** selection option or **Manual disk selection** option.



- When 61 or more physical disks configure a pool, pool expansion is automatically performed.
- The value for Total capacity of the pool displayed for a pool configuration with 61 or more physical disks is rough estimate.
- 4. Click **Next** to move on to the step for checking settings.

## 5.3.2.2 Pool Bind- Confirmation

The page for confirming the settings of pool binding appears. This page lists the settings of the pool to be bound.

Basic settings-				_	
Pool number Physical disk t AID type Pool capacity	: 00 ype : SA : RA : 1,	00h S ID6/60(4+PQ) 061.5 GB (1,139,7	776,946,176 Byte)		
Advanced settir	ugs-				
Oool name Rebuild priorit System volume	: Pool y : Midd : Bind	0000 le			
Click Advances	d for modify	ing the default s	settings in the field abo	ove.	
Physical disks	to configur	the pool -			
lumber Ca	pacity(GB)	Type Rotationa	1 speed Transfer speed	d	
0h-0000h	266.4 \$	AS 15000rpm	6.0Gbps		
0h-0001h	266.4 5	AS 15000rpm	6.0Gbps		
0h-0002h	266.4 3	SAS 15000rpm	6.0Gbps		
0h-0003h	266.4 5	SAS 15000rpm	6.0Gbps		
0h-0004h	266.4 1	SAS 15000rpm	6.0Gbps		
0h-0006h	266.4 1	AS 15000rpm	6.0Gbps		

Figure 5-1	4: Pool	Bind -	Confirmation
------------	---------	--------	--------------

Parameter	Description
Basic Settings	Displays basic settings to be used for binding a pool.
Advanced Settings	Displays default advanced settings to be used for binding a pool.
Advanced	Click <b>Advanced</b> to modify the default settings displayed under <b>Advanced Settings</b> .
Physical disks to configure the pool	Displays details of physical disks used to configure a pool.

Check if the list has any problems. If the list has no problems, click **Set** to display the confirmation message.



Click **Yes** to perform pool binding. When the binding is completed, the completion window appears.



#### 5.3.2.3 Pool Bind - Completion

When the pool binding is successfully completed, the result of pool binding appears.

🗳 Pool Bind
Pool Bind > Confirmation > Completion
Pool binding succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind another pool
Bind hot spare
Bind logical disk
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes. Configuration Flow Pool Bind + Hot Spare Bind + Logical Disk Bind + Host Information Collection + Assignment of Logical Disk (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 5-15: Pool Bind - Completion

Parameter	Description
Bind another pool	Click this hyperlink to reopen the <b>Pool Bind</b> page to bind another pool.
Bind hot spare	Click this hyperlink to open the Hot Spare Bind page.
Bind logical disk	Click this hyperlink to open the Logical Disk Bind page.

Perform the following steps:

- 1. Click **Bind hot spare** to bind hot spare.
- 2. If you do not want to bind hot spare, click **Bind logical disk** to move on to logical disk binding.

# 5.3.3 Binding a Hot Spare

This section explains how to bind a hot spare.

#### 5.3.3.1 Hot Spare Bind

The **Hot Spare Bind** page has the view display and the list display. The displays can be switched by clicking the tabs.

ist Tre	eu	is for not spare bit	iuing.		
190 01	Numbers	Canacity(GB)	Type	Potational sneed	Transfer sneed
1	00b-0007b	266.4	SAS	15000rpm	6.0Gbps
E	00h-0008h	266.4	SAS	15000rpm	6.0Gbps
m	00h-0009h	266.4	SAS	15000rpm	6.0Gbps
A	00h-000ah	266.4	SAS	15000rpm	6.0Gbps
Pool 1:	Pool name Pool0000	Physical dis SAS	k type	Capacity[GE 1061.	1] Enable Hot Spare 5 Enabled
Xplana	tion				
Enable cols the	tion i" is shown for pools hat are enabled by a :	with an enabled newly bound hot s	hot spare	e. shown in bold.	
Enable cols the cols the Enable	tion d" is shown for pools hat are enabled by a r COPY back Mode setting a the copy back mode.	with an enabled newly bound hot a g and change the s	hot spare spare are setting if n	e. shown in bold. ecessary.	
Explana Enable cols the Enable Explana Aplana Friting isks as	tion d" is shown for pools hat are enabled by a r COPY back mode setting a the copy back mode. tion failing disk is repla data from hot spare ind hot spare disks on	with an enabled newly bound hot s g and change the s ced by a new disk to the new disk atthe disk array.	hot spare setting if n t, this fund mainte	e. shown in bold. eccessary. unction allows automatica aining the positions of d	lly ata

Figure 5-16: Hot Spare Bind - List Display

Hot Spare Bind
ot Spare Bind > Completion
Select one or more physical disks for hot spare binding.
List View
DE00 00h-0007h
- Dool 1(er -
Number Dool name Dhusical disk runs Canaciru(CBI Enable Hor Soare
0000h Pocl0000 SAS 1061.5 Enabled
Explanation
"Enabled" is shown for pools with an enabled hot spare. Pools that are enabled by a newly bound hot spare are shown in bold.
Click the copy back mode setting and change the setting if necessary.
V Enable the copy back mode.
Explanation
When a failing disk is replaced by a new disk, this function allows automatically
writing data from hot spare to the new disk and maintaining the positions of data disks and hot spare disks on the disk array.
This setting is applied to all the bot snare disks in the disk array.
such serving as oppasse of day one not place whore an one wash dreaf.
Contraction of the second seco
< gack Sgt Cancel Help

Figure 5-17: Hot Spare Bind - View Display

Parameter	Description
List	By default, the List view is displayed. The List view displays a list of physical disks available to bind a spare. Select the specified check box of the physical disk for which hot spare will be bound.
View	Click this tab for the visual display of physical disks available to bind a spare. Select the specified check box of the physical disk for which hot spare will be bound.

Parameter	Description
Pool list	Select a physical disk to create a hot spare. When you select the physical disk for hot spare binding, Enabled is displayed under the <b>Enable Hot Spare</b> field of the Pool list. Pools that are enabled by a newly bound hot spare are shown in bold.
Enable the copy back mode	Select this option to enable copy back mode. When a faulty disk is replaced by a new disk, copy back mode automatically copies back the data to the new disk.

Perform the following steps to bind a hot spare:

1. Select one or more physical disks for hot spare binding.

When you select the physical disks, pools with Enable Hot Spare are displayed in bold letters.



2. Click **Set** to display the following confirmation message.

display.



3. Click **Yes** to perform hot spare binding.

#### 5.3.3.2 Hot Spare Bind - Completion

When the hot spare binding is completed, the result dialog box appears.

🖾 Hot Spare Bind
Hot Spare Bind > Completion
Hot spare binding succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind another hot spare
Bind pool
Bind logical disk
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes. Configuration Flow Pool Bind + Hot Spare Bind + Logical Disk + Host Information + Assignment of Logical Disk (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 5-18: Hot Spare Bind - Completion

Parameter	Description
Bind another hot spare	Click this hyperlink to reopen the <b>Hot Spare Bind</b> page to bind another hot spare.
Bind pool	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Pool Bind</b> page to bind another pool.
Bind logical disk	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Logical Disk Bind</b> page.

To bind a logical disk, click **Bind logical disk**.

# 5.3.4 Binding Logical Disks

This section explains how to bind logical disks.

#### 5.3.4.1 Logical Disk Bind

🚟 Logical Disk Bind			
Logical Disk Bind > Confirmation > Completion			
1: Select the pool where a logical disk will be bound.			
Show all pools			
- Pool list -			
Number Pool name RAID Physical disk type	Free capacity[GB]	Capacity[GB]	Actual capaci
000Sh Pool000S_1 RAID6/60 SAS	11119.0	11119.0	
<			۴.
Show logical disks of the selected pool			
2. Specify the number of logical disks and their capacity.			
Number of logical disks (1-4069) 1			
Logical disk capacity (1-11118) 500 🚔	GB 👻		
Logical disk capacity : 500.0 GB			
Capacity logical disks consume : 500.2 GB			
Unused capacity of the pool : 11,119.0 GB			
3: Set logical disk name.			
Logical disk name 20000011223344550026			
Explanation			
Set the name of the logical disk to be bound. If two or more logical disks are bound enter the pr	efix for them		
	< Peck North	Concol	Help
	Mexc 2	Cancer	merb

## Figure 5-19: Logical Disk Bind

Parameter	Description
Pool list	Displays details of already bound pools. Select a pool in which logical disks will be bound.
Show all pools	By clearing this check box, you can view only the pool that is bound this time.
Show logical disks of the selected pool	Click this button to confirm a list of logical disks that are bound in the currently selected pool.

Parameter	Description
Number of logical disks	Specify the number of logical disks to be bound in the spinner.
Logical disk capacity	Specify the capacity of logical disks to be bound in the spinner.
Logical disk capacity	Indicates the space size consumed by logical disks.
Capacity logical disks consume	Indicates total size of the space occupied by logical disks.
Unused capacity of the pool	Indicates free space available in a pool.
Logical disk name	Displays the automatically assigned logical disk name. To change the logical disk name, enter a new logical disk name. If two or more logical disks are bound, enter a prefix for them.

Select a pool in which logical disks will be bound, enter the number and capacity of logical disks, and click **Next**.

## 5.3.4.2 Logical Disk Bind - Confirmation

The settings of the logical disk to be bound are listed. Confirm the logical disk binding settings.

atirm the col			
mm the set	ings.		
Pool inform	ation		
Pool number	: 0000h		
Pool name	: Pool0000		
RAID type Physical di	sk type : SAS		
Basic logic	al disk settings		
Logical dis Number of J	k capacity : 10.0 GB (10,737,418 ogical disks : 2	240 byte)	
Logical dis	x name (prefix) : 2000000991010001		
Logical dis	k advanced settings		
First logic Bind priori	al disk number : 0000h ty : Middle		
Logical di	sks to be bound -	Advanced	
fumber	Logical disk name	Capacity(GB)	
000h	20000009910100010000	10.0	
NOTU .			
1001B			
5001R			
NV III			

Figure 5-20: Logical Disk Bind - Confirmation

Parameter	Description
Pool information	Displays pool information.
Basic logical disk settings	Displays the basic settings to be used for binding logical disks.
Logical Disk Advanced Settings	Displays default advanced settings to be used for binding a logical disk.
Advanced	Click <b>Advanced</b> to modify the default settings displayed under <b>Logical disk advanced settings</b> .
Logical disks to be bound	Displays the details of the logical disks to be bound.

Perform the following steps for binding a logical disk.

- 1. The settings of the logical disk to be bound are listed. Confirm the settings.
- 2. To perform advanced settings, click **Advanced**.
- 3. After confirming the settings, click **Set** to display the following confirmation message.



4. Click Yes to perform the logical-disk binding.

#### 5.3.4.3 Logical Disk Bind - Completion

The result of the logical disk binding appears.

Logical Disk Bind
Logical Disk Bind > Confirmation > Completion
Logical disk binding succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind another logical disk
Assign logical disks to the host
Set the host to which logical disks will be assigned
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes. Configuration Flow Pool Bind + Hot Spare Bind + Logical Disk Host Information Bind + Hot Spare Bind + Cogical Disk (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 5-21: Logical Disk Bind - Completion

Parameter	Description
Bind another logical disk	Click this hyperlink to reopen the <b>Logical Disk Bind</b> page for another logical disk binding.
Set the host to which logical disks will be assigned	Click this hyperlink, to open the <b>Host Information Collection</b> page.
Assign logical disks to the host	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Assignment of Logical Disk</b> page.

Click **Set the host to which logical disks will be assigned** to retrieve the information of the host to which logical disks that have been bound are assigned.

# 5.3.5 Collecting Host Information

#### 5.3.5.1 Host Information Collection

Select how to collect host information.

Information Setting Method > Host Inform	nation Registration	> Completion		
ct host information setting method.				
Collect host information automatically	(Windows, Linux or	Hyper-V).		
Opdate with host information file. (Wind	dows, Linux or Hype	r-V)		
Create host information manually. (Windo	ows, Linux, VMware	or Hyper-V)		
Explanation				
Storage Manager Agent Utility" or "Control eforehand to collect automatically or upda	Command" has to be ate with host inform	installed in a mation file.	host	
ither of the following conditions must be nformation automatically.	satisfied to colle	ct the host		
The platform of all the new hosts is eith consists of new disk arrays and new hosts	ner Windows or Linu 8.	x, and the syste	m	
The Platform of existing and new hosts is hosts are added to an existing system whe	s either Windows or are there is only o	Linux, and new ne disk array.		
For Linux hosts, you need to click Next t then make the Linux hosts recognize the h command to collect host information.	to enable host reco host recognize volu	gnize volumes, mes, and run the		
hen update with host information file, lease prepare the host information file ma	de on the host on	the client machi	ne.	

# Figure 5-22: Host Information Collection - Setting Method

Parameter	Description
Collect host information automatically (Windows, Linux or Hyper-V).	Select this option to retrieve host information automatically by showing the volume for information retrieval to all hosts.

Parameter	Description
Update with host information file.(Windows, Linux or Hyper-V)	Select this option to configure host information by using the files for host information retrieved on application servers.
Create host information manually. (Windows, Linux, VMware or Hyper-V)	Select this option by manually entering interfaces with hosts, host names, platforms, WWPNs, and port numbers to configure host information.

Select **Collect host information automatically (Windows or Linux)** and click **Next**. The confirmation dialog box appears.



Click Yes. The Host Information Collection - Registration screen appears.

#### 5.3.5.2 Host Information Collection- Registration

ost Information C	Collection			
t Information Se	tting Method > Host In	formation Registration > Com	pletion	
ellect host informat	ion.			
Click Show colle	cted information to disp	alay the host information on the	he list below.	
It may take time	a few minutes to collect	t the information on Windows	or Hyper-V.	
Wait a few minut	es before you click Show	collected information.		
You need to run	the command "iSMcc_hosti	nfo -store" to collect the ho	st information on Linux.	
Run the command	and then click show coll	ected information.		
Show collecte	d information			
Host name	Platform	IP address(IPv4)	IP address(IPv6)	_
host	Windows (WN)	192.168.10.1		
				11. 1

Figure 5-23: Host Information Collection - Registration

Parameter	Description
Show collected information	Click this button to retrieve the host information collected by the disk array unit.

Confirm whether the information on all the hosts is retrieved, and then click **Yes**.

AUTION	On Windows, it may take a few minutes to retrieve information. Wait for a few minutes before clicking Show collected information.
	On Linux, run the command to register the host information on hosts before clicking Show collected information.
	Depending on connected switches or HBA settings of hosts, link up may fail or take time, which result in failure of host information retrieval. For more details, see Section 9.1: "Troubleshooting According to Device Conditions".

## 5.3.5.3 Host Information Collection - Completion

The result of the logical-disk binding appears.

🔄 Set Host Information
Host Information Setting Method > Host Information Registration > Completion
Host information collection succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Assign logical disks to the host
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow
Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 5-24: Host Information Collection - Completion

Parameter	Description
Assign logical disks to the host	Click this hyperlink to assign the bound logical disks to hosts whose information has been retrieved.

# 5.3.6 Assigning Logical Disks

# 5.3.6.1 Assignment of Logical Disk

Assign logical disks to hosts.

Select host/logica	Assignment of Logical Disk					
Select host/logical disk > Confirm > Finish						
1: Select hosts to which logical disks will be assigned.						
- Host List -		( Number of	hosts : 6	Number of sel	ected hosts : 0 )	
Platform Nam	ne Uns	electable Re	eason			
Windows(WN) Web	Server01					
Windows(WN) Web	Server02					
Windows(WN) Web	Server03				E	
Windows(WN) Web	Server04					
Windows(WN) Web	Server05				+	
Z. Scietchogical disks       V Show all assignable logical disks       Select ALL						
- LD List -		( Numbe	2 TD 0	Thumber of a		
			r of LDs : 7	Number of s	elected LDs : 0 )	
Number OS Typ	e Logical Disk	Name (	r of LDs : 7 Capacity[GB]	Purpose	elected LDs : 0 )	
Number OS Typ 0008h	be Logical Disk 200000099103	Name (	r of LDS : 7 Capacity[GB] 3.0	Purpose	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number OS Typ 0008h 000dh	e Logical Disk 200000099103 200000099103	Name ( 0001 0001000D	r of LDS : 7 Capacity[GB] 3.0 1.0	Purpose	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number OS Typ 0008h 000dh 000eh	De Logical Disk 200000099103 20000099103 200000099103	Name ( 0001 0001000D 0001000E	r of LDS : 7 Capacity(GB) 3.0 1.0 1.0	Purpose	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number         OS Type           0008h         000dh           000eh         000fh           000fh         000fh	De Logical Disk 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103	Name () 0001 0001000D 0001000E 0001000F	r or LDs : 7 Capacity(CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0	Furpose	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number         OS Type           0008h         000dh           000eh         000fh           000fh         0010h	De Logical Disk 20000099103 20000099103 20000099103 20000099103 20000099103	Name () 0001 0001000D 0001000E 0001000F 0001000F	r or LDs : 7 Capacity(CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0	Furpose	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number         OS Type           0008h         000dh           000eh         000fh           000fh         0010h           001lh         001lh	Description         Logical Disk           200000099103         20000099103           200000099103         20000099103           200000099103         200000099103           200000099103         200000099103           200000099103         200000099103	Name         O           0001         0001000D           0001000D         0001000D           0001000D         0001000F           0001001D         0001001D           00010011         00010011	r of LDs : 7 Capacity(CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0	Purpose	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number         OS Type           0008h         000dh           000eh         000fh           000fh         0010h           001lh         0           0fffh         0	Degical Disk           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           200000099103           Pool0001_SYU0	Name         O           0001         0001000D           0001000D         0001000D           0001000D         0001000D           00010010         00010011           00010011         000000011	r of LDs : 7 Capacity(CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 8.0	Furpose System Volume	elected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock	
Number         OS Type           0008h         000dh           000eh         000eh           000fh         0010h           001lh         0           0fffh	De Logical Disk 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103 200000099103	Name () 0001 0001000D 0001000B 0001000F 00010010 00010011 00010011	r of LDs : 7 Capacity[GB] 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 8.0	Furpose System Volume	<pre>selected LDs : 0 ) Configuration Lock </pre>	

# Figure 5-25: Assignment of Logical Disk

Parameter	Description
Host List	Displays hosts registered with the disk array. Click a host to which you want to assign logical disks.
Register information of a host	Click this hyperlink if you cannot find the target host listed in the <b>Host list</b> and want to jump to the <b>Host Information</b> <b>Collection</b> page.
Show all assignable logical disks	Select this check box to display all logical disks that can be assigned.
Parameter	Description
-----------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Select drop-down list	Select the logical disk list display type from the drop-down list.
LD List	Displays the list of logical disks bound in the disk array. Click a logical disk you want to assign.

<b>A</b>	The display items can be sorted, however, the order cannot be changed.
CAUTION	Multiple logical disks can be selected at the same time.

Perform the following steps:

- 1. Select hosts from the Host List to which logical disks will be assigned.
- 2. Select logical disks from the LD List to which hosts will be assigned.
- 3. Click Next.

#### 5.3.6.2 Assignment of Logical Disk - Confirm

Assignment of Logical Disk	
Select host/logical disk > Confirm > Finish	
Confirm the settings.	
- Host List -	( Number of hosts : 1 )
Platform Name Windows(WN) hostl	
- LDs Assignable to Hosts -	( Number of LDs : 1 )
LUN         Number         OS Type         Logical Disk Name         Capacity(GB)         Purpose           0000h         0000h         2000009910100010000         10.0	Configuration Lock
	015.0 M
	Change LUN
When the settings are OK, click Set to assign the logical disks to the hos If you want to modify any settings, click Back.	its.
< Back Set	Cancel Help

Figure 5-26: Assignment of Logical Disk - Confirm

Parameter	Description
Host List	Displays the hosts to which logical disks will be assigned.
LDs Assignable to Host	Displays logical disks to be assigned to the host.
Change LUN	Click this button to open the LUN Settings page, which allows configuring LUN (Logical Unit Number) setting.

Check the setting and click **Set** to perform the logical disk assignation. When the assignation is completed, the completion page appears.

## 5.3.6.3 Assignment of Logical Disk - Finish

🔄 Assignment of Logical Disk
Select host/logical disk > Confirm > Finish
Logical disks assigning succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Assign logical disks to another host
Click Rivick to suit. Maritaring of the dick onen names
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind Collection (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

## Figure 5-27: Assignment of Logical Disk - Finish

Parameter	Description
Assign logical disks to another host	Click this hyperlink to assign another logical disk to the host.
Register information of a host	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Host Information</b> <b>Collection</b> page.

The initialization is now complete. Click **Finish**.

## 5.4 Checking Connection from Application Servers

Check connection from the application servers by following the procedure described in one of the following:

- For a Windows environment, see Section B.3: "Checking Connection from Application Server".
- For a Linux environment, Section D.3: "Checking Connection from Application Server".

# Chapter 6 Initializing a Disk Array (iSCSI)

This chapter describes how to initialize a disk array configured for iSCSI connection.

In this chapter
"Overview" on page 148
"Initialization by Storage Manager" on page 149

## 6.1 Overview

To set FC connection first in a disk array configured for both FC and iSCSI connections, see *Chapter 5, "Initializing a Disk Array (FC)"* to make the setting and then perform the procedure in this chapter.

To set iSCSI connection first, perform the procedure in this chapter and then see *Chapter 5, "Initializing a Disk Array (FC)"* to make setting.



To initialize a disk array configured for FC connection, see *Chapter 5, "Initializing a Disk Array (FC)"*.

The initialization consists of:

1. Initializing the disk array by using the initialization wizard

Use the initialization wizard to make the basic settings of disk array.

For details about the procedure, see Section 6.2.1: "Initialization Wizard".

## 2. Setting by using iSCSI Setup Tool

Use the iSCSI Setup Tool to make the setting required for the application server. For details about the procedure, see *Section 6.2.2: "iSCSI Setup Tool*".

#### 3. Binding pool

Bind a pool in the disk array.

For details about the procedure, see Section 6.2.3: "Binding a Pool".

#### 4. Binding hot spare

Bind hot spare. This step is not required unless a hot spare is bound. For details about the procedure, see *Section 6.2.4: "Binding a Hot Spare"*.

#### 5. Binding logical disk

Bind logical disks.

For details about the procedure, see Section 6.2.5: "Binding Logical Disk".

## 6. Assigning the logical disks to application servers

Assign the logical disk to the application servers.

For details about the procedure, Section 6.2.6: "Assigning Logical Disk".

## 7. Checking connection from the application servers

Check that the application servers to which the logical disk has been assigned can access the disk array.

## 6.2 Initialization by Storage Manager

## 6.2.1 Initialization Wizard

## 6.2.1.1 Overview

Use initialization wizard to make the basic settings of a disk array.

Operations to be performed on the initialization wizard are:

- Set the disk array subsystem name Change and/or confirm a disk array subsystem name.
- Set time Set time by configuring the NTP server, or manually.
- Unlock licenses
   Unlock the license.
- Set host connection ports Set host connection ports.
- Set iSNS server
   Register the iSNS server information for setting the iSNS server.

#### 6.2.1.2 Start Initialization Wizard

Click **Configuration** and **Initialization** on the left pane to open the menu. Then click **Start** to start the initialization wizard.



Figure 6-1: Starting Initialization Wizard

Before the initialization starts, the following confirmation message appears.



Click Yes to start the Initialization Wizard.

#### 6.2.1.3 Welcome to Initialization Wizard

When the Initialization Wizard starts, perform the settings as prompted.



Figure 6-2: Welcome to Initialization Wizard

Click Next.

## 6.2.1.4 Set Disk Array Subsystem Name

You can change the disk array name.

Set Disk Array Subsystem Name	> Set Time > Unlock License >
Host connection port parameters	(iSCSI) > Set iSNS Server > Finish
Set Disk Array Subsystem Name.	
Product ID	: M100 Disk Array
Serial Number	: 000000991010010
Disk Array Subsystem Name	: 0000000991010010
New Disk Array Subsystem Name	: diekarray]
	< Back Next > Cancel Help

## Figure 6-3: Set Disk Array Subsystem Name

Parameter	Description
Product ID	Displays the product ID of the disk array.
Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the disk array.

Parameter	Description
Disk Array Subsystem Name	Displays a name to identify the disk array subsystem.
New Disk Array Subsystem Name	By default, displays the current disk array subsystem name. To change this name, enter a new disk array subsystem name.

Perform the following steps to change a disk array name:

- 1. Enter a new name in the New Disk Array Subsystem Name box.
- 2. Confirm the name and click Next.

#### 6.2.1.5 Set Time

st connection port parameters (iSC	SI) > Set iSNS Se	rver > Fini	sh	
State- Current time : Apr 26, 2011 1:41:52 DM NTP server : Not synchronized				
elect a time setting method.				
<ul> <li>Synchronize the time with the</li> <li>Set the time manually.</li> <li>Don't set the time now.</li> <li>Explanation</li> </ul>	NTP server.			
synchronization with the NTP serve	er is cancelled.	is synchroniz	ed with the Ni	server,
	K Back	Next >	Cancel	Help

## Figure 6-4: Set Time

Parameter	Description
State	Displays the date and time currently set for the disk array and the status of synchronization with the NTP server.
Synchronize the time with the NTP server.	Select this option to move on to the NTP setting page.

Parameter	Description
Set the time manually.	Select this option to move on to the manual time setting page.
Don't set the time now.	Select this option to move on to host port settings without setting time.

To configure a time using NTP, select Synchronize the time with the NTP server and click Next.



For the procedure when the **Set the time manually** option is selected, see *Storage Manager Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the M Series.* 

#### Set Time - NTP server

Configure the NTP settings.

Set Dick Brray S	ubevetom Name > Set Time	> Unloc	k License	> H	ost connectio	n nort ner	omotors	(iscat)	>
Set iSNS Server	> Finish	- 00000	A DICENSE	- 11	oso connecore	m pore par	Ameders	(10001)	ŕ
Set the IP address	ses with the NTP server.								
NTP server									
IP version	IPv4 🗸								
IP address	111 . 111 . 111 . 111								
NTP server									
IP version	IPv6 🗸								
IP address	120::120								
NTP server									
IP version	IPv4 👻								
IP address	· · ·								
Explanation									
You can speci	fy up to three NTP servers.								
			< Back		Next >	Cancel		Help	

## Figure 6-5: Set Time - Setting NTP Server

Parameter	Description
IP Address	Specify the IP addresses of the NTP servers.

To set NTP server, enter the required information and click Next.

## 6.2.1.6 Unlock License

Unlocks the licenses of the disk array.

t connection port parameters (iSCSI)	> Set iSNS Server > Finish
Notify unlocked licenses.	
Hide unlocked license keys	
Application completion Application h	istory
License Key	Product
X0000000000000000000000000000000000000	BaseProduct
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	AccessControl nolim
200000000000000000000000000000000000000	StoragePowerConserver
X0000000000000000000000000000000000000	DynamicDataReplication
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DynamicSnapVolume
X0000000000000000000000000000000000000	RemoteDataReplication
X0000000000000000000000000000000000000	VolumeProtect
If it is necessary to unlock features	, enter the license key and click Add.
If it is necessary to unlock features Aicense key :	, enter the license key and click Add.
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list -	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete.
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product
If it is necessary to unlock features License key : To delete a license key, select it fro - License key list - License Key	, enter the license key and click Add. Add om the list below and click Delete. Product Delete

## Figure 6-6: Unlock License

Parameter	Description
Hide unlocked license keys	Click this button to hide unlocked license keys.
Application completion	Displays the licenses which are currently unlocked.
Application history	Displays history of unlocked licenses, deleted licenses, and expired licenses.

Parameter	Description
License key	Enter a license key and click <b>Add</b> to register the key with the <b>License key list</b> .
Add	Click this button to register the entered License key with the License key list.
Licence key list	Displays a list of entered license keys.
Delete	Click this button to delete license keys selected in the License key list.

To unlock the licenses, enter all the license keys to be unlocked and click Next.

## 6.2.1.7 Set host connection port parameters (iSCSI)

Set host connection ports for the disk array.



#### Figure 6-7: Host Connection Port Parameters (iSCSI)

Parameter	Description
Edit	Select a port from the host connection port list and click <b>Edit</b> . The dialog box for editing the settings of the selected port appears.
	To change the settings for another port, select the port to edit from the host connection port list and click <b>Edit</b> .

When editing the settings of host connection ports is completed, click **Next** on the Host connection port parameters (iSCSI) page.

Setting								×
Port number Port name Link Speed & Duplex MTU	:	01h-0: port0 10 Gbp 1500	1h 1_ ps	_01 •				
IPv4		~						
IP address	-	192	•	168	10	16		
Subnet mask	•	255	•	255	255	0		
Gateway address	:	192	ċ	168	10	 1		
OK		Can	ic	el		 Help	]	

#### Figure 6-8: Host Connection Port Parameters (iSCSI) - Setting

Parameter	Description
Port number	Displays unique number for the port.
Port name	Specify a port name.
Link Speed & Duplex	Displays the value of the link speed duplex. These values cannot be changed.
MTU	Select a MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) size from the drop-down list. Change the size according to the network environment in use. The default value is 1500.
IP address	Specify an IP address to be set for the port.
Subnet mask	Specify a subnet mask or subnet prefix to be set for the port.
Gateway address	Specify a gateway address to be set for the port.

Clicking **OK** applies the change of settings to the list.

When you click **Next** after changing the port settings as needed, the port settings are made.



Please perform another setup after waiting about 30 seconds after processing when a setup or change of an IP address is made. When MTU is changed, communication with other ports in addition to the iSCSI port may temporarily be interrupted.

## 6.2.1.8 Set iSNS Server

When any iSNS server is used, register the iSNS server information.

Disk Array Subsystem Name       Set Time       Set isns Server > Finish         isns server in parameters (iSCSI)       > Set isns Server > Finish         isns server IP address and port number list -         isns server IP address and port number list -         isns server Information       IP address 1         192.168.10.21       3205 192.168.10.22         isns server2       192.168.10.31         isns server3       192.168.10.41         isns server4       192.168.10.51         isns server5       192.168.10.52         im       im         isna       im	Dick Away Subavatan Na	ne - becirne -	Unitona Dicens			
ISNS server IP address and port number list -         ISNS Server Information       IP address 1       Port number 1       IP address 2       Port         ISNS Server1       192.168.10.21       3205       192.168.10.22       Edit         ISNS Server2       192.168.10.31       3025       192.168.10.42       Edit         ISNS Server3       192.168.10.51       3025       192.168.10.52       Delete         Im       Im       Im       Im       Im       Im         Explanation       In address connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports.       Im       Im	t connection next name	town (ISCET) > Cat	I CMC Covers	> Tiniah		
ISNS server IP address and port number list - ISNS Server Information IP address 1 Port number 1 IP address 2 Por ISNS Server1 192.168.10.21 3205 192.168.10.22 ISNS Server2 192.168.10.31 3025 192.168.10.32 ISNS Server3 192.168.10.41 3025 192.168.10.42 ISNS Server4 192.168.10.51 3025 192.168.10.52   Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	t connection port parame	ters (15051) > Set	C ISNS Server	Finish		
ISNS server IP address and port number list - ISNS Server Information IP address 1 Port number 1 IP address 2 Por ISNS Server1 192.168.10.21 3205 192.168.10.22 ISNS Server2 192.168.10.31 3025 192.168.10.32 ISNS Server3 192.168.10.41 3025 192.168.10.42 ISNS Server4 192.168.10.51 3025 192.168.10.52 IM Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	nfigure the iSNS Server set	ttings.				
ISNS Server Information       IP address 1       Port number 1       IP address 2       Port         ISNS Server1       192.168.10.21       3205       192.168.10.22       ISNS Server2       192.168.10.31       3025       192.168.10.32       Edit         ISNS Server3       192.168.10.41       3025       192.168.10.42       ISNS Server4       192.168.10.51       Belete         Im	iSNS server IP address	and port number list	-			
ISNS Server1 192.168.10.21 3205 192.168.10.22 ISNS Server2 192.168.10.31 3025 192.168.10.32 ISNS Server3 192.168.10.41 3025 192.168.10.42 ISNS Server4 192.168.10.51 3025 192.168.10.52 M Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	iSNS Server Information	TD address 1	Port number 1	TD address 2	Por	Add
ISNS Server2     192.168.10.31     3025     192.168.10.32       ISNS Server3     192.168.10.41     3025     192.168.10.42       ISNS Server4     192.168.10.51     3025     192.168.10.52         Image: Comparison of the server of the se	CNC Carner1	192 168 10 21	2205	192 168 10 22		
ISNS Server3 192.168.10.41 3025 192.168.10.42 ISNS Server4 192.168.10.51 3025 192.168.10.52 Delete Common Provide Address Servers and Address Servers registered from all ports. The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	iSNS Server2	192 168 10 31	3025	192 168 10 32	1	Edit
ISNS Server4 192.168.10.51 3025 192.168.10.52 Delete Common Provide Address Servers registered from all ports. The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	iSNS Server3	192.168.10.41	3025	192.168.10.42		
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	iSNS Server4	192.168.10.51	3025	192.168.10.52		Delete
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.						
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	•				,	
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.						
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.						
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.						
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.						
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	There I are and the					
Explanation The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	Provide and an					
The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	Explanation					
The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	Explanation					
The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	Explanation					
The disk array tries connecting to all iSNS servers registered from all ports. The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.						
The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	The disk array tries con	necting to all iSNS	servers regist	tered from all n	OFFR	
The target is registered only in iSNS that can be connected.	The disk array cries con	necting to art 1000	Servers regist	cered riom dir b	ULUS.	
	The target is registered	only in iSNS that o	can be connecte	ed.		
< Back Next > Cancel Help		< Ba	ck Nevt	> Cano	e1	Help
< Back Next > Cancel Help		< Ba	ck Next	> Canc	el	Help

Figure 6-9: Set iSNS Server

Parameter	Description
iSNS server IP address and port number list	Displays the IP address and port number of the iSNS server.
Add	Click this button to add iSNS server information. This information appears on the <b>iSNS server IP address and port number list</b> .
Edit	Select an iSNS server from <b>iSNS server IP address and</b> <b>port number list</b> and click <b>Edit</b> to modify the iSNS information.
Delete	Select an iSNS server from <b>iSNS server IP address and</b> <b>port number list</b> and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the iSNS server.

Perform any of the following steps:

- To set the iSNS servers to be monitored by the disk arrays supporting iSCSI, click Add to enter the necessary information. Then click Next to go on to Finish initialization wizard page.
- To not use the iSNS server, click **Next** to move on to license unlock procedure.

#### 6.2.1.9 Finish Initialization Wizard

Confirm that the initialization is completed.

Set Disk Array Subsystem Name > Set Time > Unlock License > Host connection port parameters (iSCSI) > Set iSNS Server > Finish
The basic disk array setting is now complete.
Click a following link if necessary.
Operate iSCSI Easy Config Tool on the host machine
Bind pool
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind Collection (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

## Figure 6-10: Finish Initialization Wizard

Parameter	Description
Operate iSCSI Easy Config Tool on the host machine	The initialization is suspended to perform initialization by using iSCSI Setup Tool.
Bind pool	When you click this hyperlink, the <b>Pool Bind</b> page appears to start pool binding.

Perform the following operations:

- 1. Click **Operate iSCSI Easy Config Tool on the host machine** to continue the initialization by using the iSCSI Setup Tool.
- 2. When the following window appears, see *Section 6.2.2: iSCSI Setup Tool* and perform initialization by using iSCSI Setup Tool. And then click **Bind pool** to bind pools.



Figure 6-11: Status - Storage Manager Server

## 6.2.2 iSCSI Setup Tool

Use iSCSI Setup tool on application servers to configure the settings required on the application servers.

For details of the procedure, see either of the following sections according to the platform of the application servers.

- For Windows application servers, see Section C.2: iSCSI Setup Tool.
- For Linux application servers, see Section E.2: iSCSI Setup Tool.

## 6.2.3 Binding a Pool

Perform basic settings for binding a pool.

### 6.2.3.1 Pool Bind

Decl Bind		
Pool Bind > Confirmation > Completion		
1: Click Show pool list to see the	pools that have been bound.	
Show pool list		
2: Select the type of physical dis	sks that configure a pool.	
Physical disk type	SAS 👻	
3: Select RAID type.	ñ	
RAID type RAID1/10	•	
4: Specify the number of physica	al disks that configure the pool and their capacity.	
Auto disk selection	Number of physical disks (2-4) 2 -	
Manual disk selection	Select physical disks	
Calculate pool capacity Total capacity of the pool	: 0 GB	
	< Back Next > Cancel Help	

Figure 6-12: Pool Bind

Parameter	Description
Show pool list	Click Show pool list to see the list of existing pools.
	Click <b>Close pool list</b> to hide the pool list.
Physical disk type	Select the type of physical disks to configure a pool.
RAID type	Select the <b>RAID type</b> of the pool.
Auto disk selection	Select the number of physical disks to be used from the <b>Number of physical disks</b> and the capacity per physical disk from <b>Physical disk capacity</b> .
	The selectable numbers of physical disks are:
	RAID6(4+PQ): 6 disks or more
	RAID6(8+PQ): 10 disks or more
	RAID5(2+P): 3 disks or more
	RAID5(4+P): 5 disks or more
	RAID5(8+P): 9 disks or more
	RAID-TM: 3 disks or more
	RAID1: 2 disks or more
Manual disk selection	Select this option and click <b>Select physical disks</b> to manually select physical disks to be used for a pool.
Calculate pool capacity	Click this button to see the estimated capacity of the pool in Total capacity of the pool. When Physical disk type, RAID type, Number of physical disks, Physical disk capacity is changed, there is possibility that "calculating" is displayed temporarily under Total capacity of the pool.

Perform the following steps to bind a pool:

- 1. Select the type of physical disk from Physical disk type.
- 2. Select the type of RAID from the **RAID type** from the drop-down list menu.
- 3. Select the number of physical disk that configure the pool and their capacity using either **Auto disk** selection option or **Manual disk selection** option.



When 61 or more physical disks configure a pool, pool expansion is automatically performed.

- The value for Total capacity of the pool displayed for a pool configuration with 61 or more physical disks is a rough estimate.
- 4. Click Next to move on to the page for confirming settings.

#### 6.2.3.2 Pool Bind - Confirmation

The page for confirming the settings of pool binding appears. This screen lists the settings of the pool to be bound.

		Completion		
nfirm the settings	i.			
Basic settings-				-
Pool number Physical disk ty RAID type Pool capacity	: 00 ype : SJ : RJ : 91	000h AS AID1/10 10.5 GB (977,641,93)	0,752 Byte)	
Advanced settin	gs-			_
Pool name Rebuild priorit; System volume	: Pool y : Midd : Bind	10000 11e 1.		
Click Advanced	i for modify	ing the default set	ttings in the field abov	e.
			Advanced	1
Dhusical disks	to confim	te the pool -		
Physical disks	co contraga	re one poor	mand Transfer mand	
00h-000fh	914.9	SAS 7200rpm	6.0Gbps	
00h-0010h	914.9	SAS 7200rpm	6.0Gbps	
Then the setting	ys are OK, c modify any s	lick Set to start 1 settings, click Bac	binding the pool. k.	

## Figure 6-13: Pool Bind - Confirmation

Parameter	Description
Basic Settings	Displays basic settings to be used for binding a pool.
Advanced Settings	Displays default advanced settings to be used for binding a pool.
Advanced	Click <b>Advanced</b> to modify the default settings displayed under <b>Advanced Settings</b> .
Physical disks to configure the pool	Displays details of physical disks used to configure a pool.

Check if the list has any problems. If the list has no problems, click **Set** to display the confirmation dialog box.



Click Yes to perform pool binding. When the binding is completed, the completion page appears.



#### 6.2.3.3 Pool Bind - Completion

When the pool binding is successfully completed, the result of pool binding appears.

S POOT BING
Pool Bind > Confirmation > Completion
Pool binding succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind another pool
<u>Bind hot spare</u>
Bind logical disk
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow
Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 6-14: Pool Bind - Completion.

Parameter	Description
Bind another pool	Click this hyperlink to reopen the <b>Pool Bind</b> page to bind another pool.
Bind hot spare	Click this hyperlink to open the Hot Spare Bind page.
Bind logical disk	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Logical Disk Bind</b> page.

Perform the following steps:

- 1. Click **Bind hot spare** to bind a hot spare.
- 2. If you do not want to bind a hot spare, click **Bind logical disk** to move on to logical disk binding.

## 6.2.4 Binding a Hot Spare

This section explains how to bind hot spare.

#### 6.2.4.1 Hot Spare Bind

The **Hot Spare Bind** page has the view display and the list display. The displays can be switched by clicking the tabs.

	or more physical	i disks for hot sp	bare bind	ng.	
ist View	e				
Nur	nber A	Capacity[GB]	Туре	Rotational speed	Transfer speed
001	-0012h	914.9	SAS	7200rpm	6.0Gbps
00h	1-0013h	914.9	SAS	7200rpm	6.0Gbps
Deel li					
	-			<b>A</b>	Proble Hore
umber	Pool name	Physical di	isk type	Capacity[GB	] Enable Hot Spare
10.05	Bee10000	CAC		910	E Dissbled
000h	Poo10000	SAS		910.	5 Disabled
000h	Poo10000	SAS		910.	5 Disabled
000h	Poo10000	SAS		910.	5 Disabled
000h	Poe10000	SAS		910.1	5 Disabled
000h Explanati	Pool0000	SAS		910.	5 Disabled
000h Explanati Enabled"	Pool0000	SAS cols with an e	nabled ho	910.	5 Disabled
000h Englanati Engbled" cols tha	Pool0000 .on is shown for p t are enabled by	SAS cols with an ex y a newly bound	nabled ho d hot spa	910. Dt spare. are are shown in bold.	5 Disabled
oooh Explanati Enabled" ools tha	Pool0000 .on is shown for p t are enabled b	SAS ools with an e y a newly bound	nabled ho	910. Dt spare. are are shown in bold.	5 Disabled
Coplanati Enabled" cols tha	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled by opy back mode s	SAS ools with an e y a newly bound etting and chan	nabled ho d hot spi ge the se	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. Uting if necessary.	5 Disabled
ixplanati Enabled" ools tha iCK the CC	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled b Dpy back mode s the copy back me	SAS ools with an e y a newly boun etting and chan ode.	nabled ho d hot spi ge the se	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. Iting if necessary.	5 Disabled
Explanati Enabled" ools that ICK the CO Enable 1	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled by opy back mode so the copy back mode	SAS ools with an ex y a newly bound etting and chang ode.	nabled ho d hot spo ge the se	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. tting if necessary.	5 Disabled
DOON Explanati Enabled" ools tha ICK the CO Enable 1 Explanati	Pool0000 is shown for put t are enabled by Dpy back mode so the copy back mo	SAS cols with an en y a newly bound etting and chang ode.	nabled ho d hot spi ge the se	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. tting if necessary.	5 Disabled
Explanati Enabled" ools tha Enable the Enable the Explanati	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled b Dpy back mode so the copy back mode on iling disk is r	SAS ools with an e y a newly bound etting and chang ode. eplaced by a n	nabled ho d hot spi ge the se ew disk,	910.1 ot spare. are are shown in bold. thing if necessary.	5 Disabled
Explanati Enabled" ools tha Enable of Explanati hen a fa riting d	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled b opy back mode s the copy back m on iling disk is r ata from hot sp hot spare disk	SAS ools with an e y a newly bound etting and chan ode. eplaced by a n are to the new s on the disk	nabled ho d hot spa ge the se ew disk, disk and array.	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. thing if necessary. this function allows is i maintaining the position	5 Disabled automatically tions of data
Constanti Enabled" ools that Enable of Constanti hen a fa riting d isks and	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled by Dpy back mode so the copy back mode on iling disk is re ata from hot sp hot spare disk	SAS ools with an ex y a newly bound etting and chang ode. eplaced by a nu are to the new s on the disk of	nabled ho d hot spa ge the se ew disk, disk and array.	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. Iting if necessary. this function allows i i maintaining the posit	automatically tions of data
Explanati Enabled" ools tha ICK the Co Enable of Explanati hen a fa riting d isks and his sett	Pool0000 is shown for p t are enabled by Dpy back mode S the copy back me ton iling disk is r ata from hot sp hot spare disk ing is applied	SAS cols with an ex y a newly bound etting and chan ode. eplaced by a n are to the new s on the disk to all the hot	nabled ho d hot spa ge the Se ew disk, disk and array. spare di	910. ot spare. are are shown in bold. Iting if necessary. this function allows of i maintaining the posi- lisks in the disk array	5 Disabled automatically tions of data

Figure 6-15: Hot Spare Bind - List Display

Hot Spare Bind
Hot Spare Bind > Completion
1: Select one or more physical disks for hot spare binding.
List View
DE00
- Pool list - Number Pool name Physical disk type Capacity(GB) Enable Hot Spare 0000h Pool0000 SAS 910.5 Disabled
Explanation "Enabled" is shown for pools with an enabled hot spare. Pools that are enabled by a newly bound hot spare are shown in bold. 2: Click the copy back mode setting and change the setting if necessary.
Enable the copy back mode.
Explanation When a failing disk is replaced by a new disk, this function allows automatically writing data from hot spare to the new disk and maintaining the positions of data disks and hot spare disks on the disk array.
ints setting is applied to all the not spare disks in the disk array.
< Back Set Cancel Help

Figure 6-16: Hot Spare Bind - View Display

Parameter	Description
List	By default, the List view is displayed. The List view displays a list of physical disks available to bind a spare. Select the specified check box of the physical disk for which hot spare will be bound.
View	Click this tab for the visual display of physical disks available to bind a spare. Select the specified check box of the physical disk for which hot spare will be bound.
Pool list	Select a physical disk to create a hot spare. When you select the physical disk for hot spare binding, Enabled is displayed under the <b>Enable Hot Spare</b> field of the Pool list. Pools that are enabled by a newly bound hot spare are shown in bold letters.
Enable the copy back mode	Select this option to enable copy back mode. When a faulty disk is replaced by a new disk, copy back mode automatically copies back the data to the new disk.

Perform the following steps to bind a hot spare:

1. Select one or more physical disks for hot spare binding.



- For slots having no physical disks, the slot names and check boxes are grayed out in the visual display, and the slots are not listed in the list display.
- For physical disks for which a pool has been bound, the check boxes are grayed out in the visual display, and the disks are not listed in the list display.
- 2. Click Set to display the confirmation dialog box.



3. Click **Yes** to perform hot spare binding.

## 6.2.4.2 Hot Spare Bind - Completion

When the hot spare binding is completed, the result dialog box appears.

🔄 Hot Spare Bind
Hot Spare Bind > Completion
Hot spare binding succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind another hot spare
Bind pool
Bind logical disk
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes. Configuration Flow Pool Bind + Hot Spare Bind + Logical Disk Host Information Collection (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 6-17: Hot Spare Bind - Completion

Parameter	Description
Bind another hot spare	Click this hyperlink to reopen the <b>Hot Spare Bind</b> page to bind another hot spare.
Bind pool	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Pool Bind</b> page to bind another pool.
Bind logical disk	Click this hyperlink to open the Logical Disk Bind page.

To bind a logical disk, click **Bind logical disk**.

## 6.2.5 Binding Logical Disk

This section explains how to bind a logical disk.

## 6.2.5.1 Logical Disk Bind

🛎 Logical Disk Bind			
Logical Disk Bind > Confirmation > Completion			
1: Select the pool where a logical disk will be bound.			
Show all pools			
- Pool list -			
Number Pool name RAID Physical disk type	Free capacity[GB]	Capacity[GB]	Actual capaci
0005h Peel0005_1 PAIDe/60 SAS	11119.0	11119.0	
< III			Þ.
Show logical disks of the selected pool			
2: Specify the number of logical disks and their capacity.			
Number of logical disks (1-4069) 1			
Logical disk capacity (1-11118) 500 🚔	GB 👻		
Logical disk capacity : 500.0 GB			
Capacity logical disks consume : 500.2 GB			
Unused capacity of the pool : 11,119.0 GB			
3: Set logical disk name.			
Logical disk name 20000011223344550026			
Explanation			
Set the name of the logical disk to be bound. If two or more logical disks are bound enter the pr	efix for them		
	< Back Nevt >	Cancel	Help
	NEAC		merb

Figure 6-18: Logical Disk Bind

Parameter	Description
Pool list	Displays details of already bound pools. Select a pool in which logical disks will be bound.
Show all pools	By clearing this check box, you can view only the pool that is bound this time.

Parameter	Description
Show logical disks of the selected pool	Click this button to confirm a list of logical disks that are bound in the currently selected pool.
Number of logical disks	Specify the number of logical disks to be bound in the spinner.
Logical disk capacity	Specify the capacity of logical disks to be bound in the spinner.
Logical disk capacity	Indicates the capacity of a single logical disk.
Capacity logical disks consume	Indicates total size of the space occupied by logical disks.
Unused capacity of the pool	Indicates free space available in a pool.
Logical disk name	Enter a logical disk name. If two or more logical disks are bound, enter the prefix for them.

Select a pool in which logical disks will be bound, enter the number and capacity of logical disks, and click **Next**.

## 6.2.5.2 Logical Disk Bind - Confirmation

The settings of the logical disk to be bound are listed. Confirm the logical disk binding settings.

Pool information	1	
Pool number	: 0000h	
Pool name	: Pool0000	
RAID type	: RAID1/10	
Physical disk t	ype : SAS	
Basic logical di	isk settings	
Logical disk cap	pacity : 9.0 GB (9,663,676,416 by	rte)
Number of logics	al disks : 2	
Logical disk nam	me (prefix) : 200000991010010	
Logical disk adv	vanced settings	
Logical disk tv	pe :-	
First logical di	isk number : 0000h	
Bind priority	: Middle	
*	o be bound -	Advanced
Logical disks t		
Number Ty	pe Logical disk name	Capacity[GB]
Number Ty 0000h	pe Logical disk name 20000009910100100000	Capacity[GB] 9.0
Logical disks t Number Ty 0000h 0001h	pe Logical disk name 20000009910100100000 2000009910100100001	Capacity[GB] 9.0 9.0
Number Tw 0000h 0001h	pe Logical disk name 2000009910100100000 2000009910100100001	Capacity[GB] 9.0 9.0

## Figure 6-19: Logical Disk Bind - Confirmation

Parameter	Description
Basic logical disk settings	Displays the basic settings to be used for binding logical disks.
Pool information	Displays pool information.
Logical Disk Advanced Settings	Displays default advanced settings to be used for binding a logical disk.

Parameter	Description
Advanced	Click <b>Advanced</b> to modify the default settings displayed under Logical Disk Advanced Settings.
Logical disks to be bound	Displays the details of the logical disks to be bound.

Perform the following steps for binding a logical disk:

- 1. The settings of the logical disk to be bound are listed. Confirm the settings.
- 2. To perform advanced settings, click Advanced.
- 3. After confirming the settings, click **Set** to display the confirmation message.



4. Click Yes to perform the logical disk binding.
## 6.2.5.3 Logical Disk Bind - Completion

The result of the logical disk binding appears.

🗳 Logical Disk Bind
Logical Disk Bind > Confirmation > Completion
Logical disk binding succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Bind another logical disk
Assign logical disks to the host
Set the host to which logical disks will be assigned
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes. Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Host Information Collection Collection (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure 6-20: Logical Disk Bind - Completion

Parameter	Description
Bind another logical disk	Click this hyperlink to reopen the <b>Logical Disk Bind</b> page for another logical disk binding.
Assign logical disks to the host	Click this hyperlink to open the <b>Assignment of Logical Disk</b> page.

To assign the bound logical disk to a host, click Assign logical disks to the host.

## 6.2.6 Assigning Logical Disk

## 6.2.6.1 Assignment of Logical Disk

Assign logical disks to a host.

elect host/loo						
	gical disk > C	onfirm > Fin	ish			
Select hosts t	o which logical dis	ks will be assign	ed.			
- Host List	-		( Number of	hosts : 6 🛛 🖡	Number of selecte	ed hosts : O
Platform	Name	Unselectable	Reason			
Windows(WN)	WebServer01					
Windows(WN)	WebServer02					
Windows(WN)	WebServer03					E
Windows(WN)	WebServer04					
Windows(WN)	WebServer05					-
Select logical	disks to be assign	ed to the hosts.				
Show all	essioneble logic	al disks				
Select ALL		_				
h		•				
- LD List -		•	( Number	of LDs : 7	Number of selec	ted LDs : O
- LD List - Number OS	Type Logical	Disk Name	( Number Capacity[GB]	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of selec	ted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number OS 0008h	Type Logical 20000009	Disk Name 91030001	( Number Capacity[GB] 3.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of selec	eted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number OS 0008h 000dh	Type Logical 20000009 20000009	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D	( Number Capacity[GB] 3.0 1.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of selec	eted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number 03 0008h 000dh 000eh	Type Logical 2000009 2000009 2000009	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D 91030001000B	( Number Capacity[CB] 3.0 1.0 1.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of select	tted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number 03 0008h 000dh 000eh 000fh	Type Logical 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D 91030001000E 91030001000F	( Number Capacity [CB] 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of selec	cted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number 03 0008h 000dh 000eh 000fh 0010h	Type Logical 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D 91030001000E 91030001000F 910300010010	( Number Capacity(CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of select	cted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number 03 0008h 000dh 000eh 000fh 0010h 0011h	Type         Logical           2000009         2000009           2000009         2000009           2000009         2000009           2000009         2000009           2000009         2000009           2000009         2000009	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D 91030001000E 91030001000F 910300010010 910300010011	( Number Capacity (CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of selec	tted LDs : 0 Lock Assignme
- LD List - Number 03 0008h 000dh 000eh 000fh 0010h 0011h 0fffh	Туре Logical 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009 2000009 Роо10001	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D 91030001000E 91030001000F 910300010010 910300010011 _STV0FFF	( Number Capacity (CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 8.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose	Number of select	ted LDs : 0 Lock Assignmen
- LD List - Number OS 0008h 000dh 000eh 000eh 0010h 0011h 0011h 0fffh <	Type         Logical           20000009         2000009           20000009         2000009           20000009         2000009           20000009         20000009           20000009         20000009           20000009         20000009           20000009         20000009	Disk Name 91030001 91030001000D 91030001000F 910300010010 910300010011 _STVOFFF	( Number Capacity(CB) 3.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 8.0	of LDs : 7 Purpose System Volume	Number of select	sted LDs : 0 Lock Assignment

Figure 6-21: Assignment of Logical Disk

Parameter	Description
Host List	Displays hosts registered with the disk array.
	Click a host to which you want to assign logical disks.
Add unlisted host	Click this button to display a host addition page on which another host can be added.
Show all assignable logical disks	Select this check box to display all logical disks that can be assigned.
Select drop-down list	Select the logical disk list display type from the drop-down list.
LD List	Displays host information registered with the disk array. Click a logical disk you want to assign.
	Select logical disks to assign to host.



Perform the following steps:

- 1. Select hosts from the Host List to which logical disks will be assigned.
- 2. Select logical disks from the LD List to which hosts will be assigned.
- 3. Click Next.

#### 6.2.6.2 Assignment of Logical Disk - Confirm

Assignment of Logical Disk			
elect host/logical disk	> Confirm > Finish		
onfirm the settings.			
- Host List -			( Number of hosts : 1 )
Platform Name			
WINDOWS (WA) NOSCI			
- LDs Assignable to Hosts	-		(Number of LDs : 1 )
LUN Number OS Type	Logical Disk Name	Capacity[GB] Purp	pose Configuration Lock
0000h 0000h	20000009910100100000	9.0	
( )			
			Change LUN
	·	- lesient distance	
If you want to modify an	y settings, click Back.	e logical disks to	the nosts.
	< Back	Set	Cancel Help
		- Constanting (	

#### Figure 6-22: Assignment of Logical Disk - Confirm

Parameter	Description
Host List	Displays the host to which logical disks will be assigned.
LDs Assignable to Host	Displays logical disks to be assigned to the host.
Change LUN	Click this button to open the LUN Settings page, which allows configuring LUN (Logical Unit Number) settings.

Check the setting and click **Set** to perform the logical disk assignation. When the assignation is completed, the completion page appears.

## 6.2.6.3 Assignment of Logical Disk - Finish

🗄 Assignment of Logical Disk
Select host/logical disk > Confirm > Finish
Logical disks assigning succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Assign logical disks to another host
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind Collection (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

## Figure 6-23: Assignment of Logical Disk - Finish

Parameter	Description
Assign other logical disks to the host	Click this hyperlink to assign another logical disk to the host.

The initialization is now complete. Click **Finish**.

# Chapter 7 Installing Optional Parts

This chapter describes the preparation and installation of the optional parts of a disk array unit.

In this chapter
"Optional Parts" on page 186
"Preparation" on page 190
"Installation and Removal" on page 191

# 7.1 Optional Parts

Optional parts for disk array units are shown below.

Product Name	Qty.	Remark
DAC cabinet	1	Two AC power supplies installed
Host Port Extension (HPE) (8 Gbps, 4 ports, FC)	1	Double
Host Port Extension (HPE) (1 Gbps, 2 ports, iSCSI)	1	Double
Host Port Extension (HPE) (10 Gbps, 2 ports, iSCSI)	1	Double
Standard cache module (12 GB)	1	Two controllers
Standard cache module (24 GB)	1	Two controllers
Standard cache module (48 GB)	1	Two controllers
Additional cache module (12 GB -> 24 GB)	1	Two controllers
Additional cache module (12 GB -> 48 GB)	1	Two controllers
Additional cache module (24 GB -> 48 GB)	1	Two controllers
Disk Enclosure (DE) for 3.5-inch disk drives	1	Two AC power supplies installed Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
Disk Enclosure (DE) for 2.5-inch disk drives	1	Two AC power supplies installed Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
3.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	15Krpm/300GB SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
3.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	15Krpm/450GB SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
3.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	15Krpm/600GB (Standard) SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series

## Table 7-1: Optima3600 Optional Parts

Product Name	Qty.	Remark
3.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	15Krpm/600GB (Encryption) SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
3.5-inch NL-SAS disk drive	1	7.2Krpm/1TB NL-SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
3.5-inch NL-SAS disk drive	1	7.2Krpm/2TB NL-SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
3.5-inch SSD	1	6Grpm/400GB SSD Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
2.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	10Krpm/300GB SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
2.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	10Krpm/450GB SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
2.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	10Krpm/600GB (Standard) SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
2.5-inch SAS disk drive	1	10Krpm/600GB (Encryption) SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
2.5-inch NL-SAS disk drive	1	7.2Krpm/1TB NL-SAS disk drive Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
2.5-inch SSD	1	6Grpm/100GB SSD Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
DAC cabinet	1	Two AC power supplies installed
Disk Enclosure (DE) for 3.5-inch disk drives	1	Two AC power supplies installed Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
Disk Enclosure (DE) for 2.5-inch disk drives	1	Two AC power supplies installed Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
DE Adapter Card	1	Double
DAC cabinet	1	Two AC power supplies installed

Table 7-1:	Optima3600	Optional	Parts
		- p	

Product Name	Qty.	Remark
Disk Enclosure (DE) for 3.5-inch disk drives	1	Two AC power supplies installed Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series
Disk Enclosure (DE) for 2.5-inch disk drives	1	Two AC power supplies installed Common to Optima1600/Optima2600 Series

#### Table 7-1: Optima3600 Optional Parts

#### Table 7-2: Optional Parts For All Series

Product Name	Qty.	Remark
Front bezel	1	
HDD carrier for 3.5-inch disk drives	1	-
Dummy HDD carrier for 3.5-inch disk drives	1	-
HDD carrier for 2.5-inch disk drives	1	-
Dummy HDD carrier for 2.5-inch disk drives	1	-



The NL-SAS disk drive cannot be mixed in the same pool as the SAS disk drive. The operation will fail if they are mixed in the same pool. If the operation fails, a pool will be built that appears to have a capacity of 0, but this pool cannot be used and should be removed.

Confirm whether such a pool has been created before using the disk array unit.

#### **Disk Drive Features**

The disk drives that can be connected to the disk array unit are:

- SSD Most superior in reliability and random access performance due to having no mechanical parts (motor, head, media), unlike HDD.
- SAS HDD Superior in reliability and performance. Used in critical tasks requiring high performance/non-stop function.
- Nearline SAS HDD High capacity disk that is suitable as a back up or archive disk. Can be used for regular, relatively low burden work (random access I/O) offered at a low price. Because it has both high capacity and low performance, failure recovery time is longer than that of SAS HDD.

In terms of reliability, RAID-60 and RAID-TM, which have duplicate redundancy, are recommended.

	SSD	15 Krpm SAS HDD	10 Krpm SAS HDD	7.2 Krpm Nearline SAS HDD
Reliability	Optimal	High	High	Low
Performance	Optimal	High	Average	Low Higher random access performance than SATA
Purpose	<ul> <li>High random access performance</li> <li>High reliability</li> <li>Low noise</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Mission-critical</li> <li>High transaction</li> </ul>	Low power consumption	<ul> <li>High capacity</li> <li>Backup/archive</li> <li>Regular, low-burden work (random access l/O)</li> </ul>

Table 7-3: Disk Drive Features

## 7.2 Preparation

Review the following precautions and procedures when installing options to the disk array unit.

- Although users can install optional products themselves, Bull assumes no responsibility for damage to the disk array unit or components or for effects resulting from use if they do so. It is recommended that this work be performed by maintenance engineers of your maintenance service agent who have detailed expert knowledge about the disk array unit.
- Use optional parts and cables specified by Bull. There is a charge for repairs associated with malfunction, failure, or damage to the unit that occurs as a result of using parts other than those specified.

#### About electrostatic countermeasures

Be extremely careful of static electricity during installation as it could damage the parts.

- Wear a wrist strap (armband or antistatic gloves)
- Location
  - □ Install on a floor for which measures to prevent static electricity have been taken or on concrete.
  - If installing on a carpet or other location prone to static electricity, do the work after taking measures to prevent static electricity.
- Use of mat

Place the disk array unit on an antistatic mat and install the parts.

- Clothing
  - Do not install parts while wearing clothing made of wool or synthetic fibers.
  - Wear antistatic shoes while installing.
  - □ Prior to installation, remove items made of metal (for example: rings, bracelets, and watches).
- Handling the parts
  - Keep the parts to install in antistatic bags until inserting them in the disk array unit.
  - □ Hold each part by its edge and do not touch the pins or mounting parts.
  - □ When storing or transporting the parts, keep them in antistatic bags for protection.

# 7.3 Installation and Removal

Perform the following procedures to install or remove the concerned optional part of a disk array unit:

## 7.3.1 Front Bezel



The procedures described in this section is intended for the front bezel of DE. The front bezel of DAC can be inserted and removed following the same procedures.

#### Inserting a front bezel

The procedure for inserting a front bezel is as follows:

1. To install a front bezel, first unlock it by turning the key to the horizontal position.





Lock state of the key

Release state of the key

Figure 7-1: Key of the Front Bezel

2. Catch the left side of the front bezel on the hook of the unit.



Figure 7-2: Inserting the Front Bezel (1)

3. Catch the right side of the front bezel, too. Then lock it by turning the key counterclockwise. Installation of the front bezel is now complete.



Figure 7-3: Inserting the Front Bezel (2)

#### Removing a front bezel

The procedure for removing a front bezel is as follows:

1. Release the lock by turning the key clockwise.

2. Pull the right side towards you by pivoting the left end, detach the left side, and pull the entire bezel towards you.



Figure 7-4: Removing the Front Bezel

## 7.3.2 Host Port Extension (HPE)

#### **Removing a Host Port Extension**

The procedure for removing a host port extension from its cabinet is as follows:

- 1. Confirm that the power is turned off.
- 2. Confirm that the cable of the host port extension is not connected.
- 3. Pull out the host port extension by pushing its handle downward.

#### Installing a Host Port Extension

The procedure for installing a host port extension in the cabinet is as follows.

- 1. Confirm that the power is turned off.
- 2. Remove dummy canister if it is installed in a host port extension slot of the cabinet.
- 3. Insert the host port extension, press until it is fully inserted, and then make sure it is locked.



If the host port extension is not fully inserted, it could lead to malfunction.

### 7.3.3 Disk Drives

For details about how to install disk drives, see Section 3.2.3: "Installing Disk Drives".

#### **Removing a Disk Drive**

The procedure for removing the disk drive is as follows:

1. Release the lock on the ejector of the disk drive, and pull the drive forward at an angle of about 40°.



Before pulling the ejector forward, wait about 30 seconds for the disk drive to fully stop (HDD only).

2. Hold the target disk drive firmly while slowly pulling it from its slot.



Figure 7-5: Removing the Disk Drive

3. Close the ejector of the disk drive.

## 7.3.4 Disk Enclosures

For installing and removing disk enclosures, see the sections below.

#### 7.3.4.1 Mounting Disk Enclosures on Rack

See Section 3.2.2: "Mounting a Disk Enclosure on a Rack".

#### 7.3.4.2 Connecting Disk Enclosures

When connecting a disk enclosure, use a SAS cable to connect DPx on the disk array unit with the DP0-IN on the disk enclosure. If connecting multiple disk enclosures, use a SAS cable to connect DP0-OUT on a disk enclosure with DP0-IN on the next disk enclosure.



Figure 7-6: SAS Cable Connection

Do not connect to the DP1-IN (on the left of DP0-IN).



Figure 7-7: Cables and Connectors



### 7.3.4.3 SAS Cable Connections and DE and PD Numbers

The number of disk enclosures show below can be connected to this disk array unit.

*Figure 7-8: SAS Cable Connections and DE/PD Numbers* shows how to connect disk enclosures. The DE and PD numbers are described following the figure.



Figure 7-8: SAS Cable Connections and DE/PD Numbers

The number of DEs that can be connected to a disk port (DP) of DPE differs depending on the type of DE to be connected.

- Total number of disk drives supported by the disk array: 384
- Number of disk drives that can be connected to a DP: 96
  - Ukhen connecting only 3.5-inch DEs, up to eight DEs can be connected.
  - □ When connecting only 2.5-inch DEs, up to four DEs can be connected.

For the Optima3600 Series, connection of the basic DE (DE 00 in the figure below) is required.

DE No.	2.5-inch 3.5-inch			DE No.	2.5-inch	3.5-inch
DE 1F	-	PD 1F00 to		DE 0F	-	PD 0F00
		1F0B				to 0F0B
DE 1E	-	PD 1E00 to		DE 0E	-	PD 0E00
		1E0B				to 0E0B
DE 1D	-	PD 1D00 to		DE 0D	-	PD 0D00
		1D0B				to 0D0B
DE 1C	-	PD 1C00 to		DE 0C	-	PD 0C00
		1C0B				to 0C0B
DE 1B	PD 1B00	PD 1B00 to		DE 0B	PD 0B00	PD 0B00
	to 1B17	1B0B			to 0B17	to 0B0B
DE 1A	PD 1A00	PD 1A00 to		DE 0A	PD 0A00	PD 0A00
	to 1A17	1A0B			to 0A17	to 0A0B
DE 19	PD 1900 to	PD 1900 to		DE 09	PD 0900 to	PD 0900
	1917	190B			0917	to 090B
DE 18	PD 1800 to	PD 1800 to		DE 08	PD 0800 to	PD 0800
	1817	180B			0817	to 080B
			PE3 DPE			
		DDD				
		DPP DP1 D	PE2 DPE	DP0 0 DP1		
		DPO DP1 D DP0	PE2 DPE	0 DP0 0 DP1 DP0		
DF 10	PD 1000 to		PE2 DPE			PD 0000
DE 10	PD 1000 to 1017	DP0 DP1 D DP0 PD 1000 to 100B	PE2 DPE	DP0 0 DP1 DP0 DE 00	PD 0000~ 0017	PD 0000 to 000B
DE 10	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to	DP0 DP1 D DP0 PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to	PE2 DPE	DP0 DP1 DP0 DE 00 DE 01	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100
DE 10 DE 11	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B	PE2 DPE	DE 01 DE 01	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 01	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 01 DE 02	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14 DE 15	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B PD 1500 to	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04 DE 05	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B PD 0500
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14 DE 15	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B PD 1500 to 150B	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04 DE 05	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B PD 0500 to 050B
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14 DE 15 DE 16	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 - -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B PD 1500 to 150B PD 1600 to	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04 DE 05 DE 06	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 - -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B PD 0500 to 050B PD 0600
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14 DE 15 DE 16	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 - -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B PD 1500 to 150B PD 1600 to 160B	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04 DE 05 DE 06	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 - -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B PD 0500 to 050B PD 0600 to 060B
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14 DE 15 DE 16 DE 17	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 - - -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1200 to 130B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B PD 1500 to 150B PD 1600 to 160B PD 1700 to	PE2 DPE	DE 00 DE 00 DE 01 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04 DE 05 DE 06 DE 06 DE 07	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 - - -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B PD 0400 to 050B PD 0500 to 050B PD 0600 to 060B PD 0700
DE 10 DE 11 DE 12 DE 13 DE 14 DE 15 DE 16 DE 17	PD 1000 to 1017 PD 1100 to 1117 PD 1200 to 1217 PD 1300 to 1317 - - -	PD 1000 to 100B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1100 to 110B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1200 to 120B PD 1300 to 130B PD 1400 to 140B PD 1500 to 150B PD 1600 to 160B PD 1700 to 170B	PE2 DPE	DP0 DP1 DP0 DE 00 DE 01 DE 02 DE 03 DE 04 DE 05 DE 06 DE 07	PD 0000~ 0017 PD 0100~ 0117 PD 0200~ 0217 PD 0300~ 0317 - - -	PD 0000 to 000B PD 0100 to 010B PD 0200 to 020B PD 0300 to 030B PD 0400 to 040B PD 0400 to 050B PD 0500 to 050B PD 0600 to 060B PD 0700 to 070B

## 7.3.5 Batteries (BBU)

For installing and removing the battery (BBU), follow the procedure given below:

- 1. Confirm that the disk array has been powered off.
- 2. Remove the BBU.

Remove the screws on the front of the BBU, and pull it.

3. Insert a new BBU.

Straight and fully insert the target BBU. Then, anchor it by tightening the screws on the front of the BBU.

## 7.3.6 Cache Modules

For installing and removing the cache modules, follow the procedure given below:



- 1. Confirm that the disk array has been powered off.
- 2. Remove the controller (CONT) from its cabinet.
  - (1) Loosen the screws on the both ejectors on the controller (CONT).
  - (2) Pull and open the ejectors. Then the controller (CONT) comes out.
  - (3) Remove the controller by holding it with both hands.
- 3. Remove three DIMMs.

Push the levers on both sides of the DIMM sockets outward, and then remove the DIMMs from each socket by pulling them upward.

4. Insert new DIMMs.

Open the levers of the DIMM sockets, and then insert three new DIMMs into the sockets straight. Fit the notch of the DIMM terminal to the wrong insertion prevention part of the socket. Push the inserted DIMM all the way in, lock the DIMM and socket by putting the levers inside.

5. Remove the Flash Memory ASSYs.

(1) Unlock the Flash Memory ASSY fixture.

(2) Among four Flash Memory ASSYs, Remove three Flash Memory ASSYs; PDOM1, PDOM2, and PDOM3, from the socket by pulling it upward.



- 6. Installing new Flash Memory ASSYs.
  - (1) Insert new Flash Memory ASSYs to the sockets.
  - (2) Lock the fixture.
- 7. Install the controller (CONT) to its cabinet.
  - (1) Hold the both ejector on the controller (CONT), and then unlock and pull the ejectors open.
  - (2) Fully insert the controller (CONT) to its cabinet.

(3) Close the ejectors. If the controller (CONT) is out of its cabinet, insert it again because it was not correctly inserted. After confirming that the controller (CONT) is correctly inserted, tighten the screws of the ejectors.

# **Chapter 8 Changes to the Configuration**

This chapter describes how to change the settings of a disk array unit after use of the disk array unit is started.

In this chapter
"Modifying the Settings by Using DIP Switches" on page 202
"Modifying the Configuration by Storage Manager (FC)" on page 203
"Modifying the Configuration by Storage Manager (iSCSI)" on page 206

# 8.1 Modifying the Settings by Using DIP Switches

The OptimaX600 series does not require modification of the settings by using DIP switches. Do not change the configuration of the DIP switches located on the surface of the controller.





Figure 8-1: DIP Switch

# 8.2 Modifying the Configuration by Storage Manager (FC)

This section provides information on modifying the configuration of an FC connected disk array by Storage Manager.

## 8.2.1 Binding Additional Logical Disks (FC)

This section describes how to bind additional logical disks on an FC connected disk array.

To bind additional logical disks on an FC connected disk array, click **Configuration**, **Logical Disk** and **Logical Disk Bind** on the left pane of the window.

See Section 8.2.2: "Adding Application Servers" to bind additional logical disks when an application server is added.



Figure 8-2: Binding a Logical Disk (FC)

For the details of the procedure after the startup, see Section 5.3.4: "Binding Logical Disks".

### 8.2.2 Adding Application Servers

This section describes how to add logical disks and an application server to an initialized disk array.

1. Collect the host information on the application server

First of all, collect the host information on the application server to be newly added.

For details about collecting the host information of application servers, see Section 5.2: "Collecting Host Information From Application Servers".

2. Retrieve the host information

Retrieve the host information of the application server.

Click Host > Host Operation > Host information collection on the menu located on the left of the window to open the window for retrieving the host information.

3. Bind a pool

Bind a pool if logical disks should be bound not on an existing pool but on a pool that is newly bound.

4. Bind logical disks

Bind logical disks to be assigned to the new application server.



Figure 8-3: Logical Disk Bind (FC)

Click **Configuration**, **Logical Disk** and **Logical Disk Bind** on the left pane of the window to start binding the logical disks.

The rest of the procedure is the same as the procedure in Section 5.3.4: "Binding Logical Disks".

5. Assign the logical disks to the host

Lastly, assign the logical disks you have created to the application server.

On the **Logical Disk Binding Completion** window, click **Assign logical disk to the host** to start assigning the logical disks.

The rest of the procedure is the same as the procedure in *Section 5.3.5: "Collecting Host Information"*.

#### 8.2.3 Using the Initialization Wizard to Modify the Configuration

The configuration can be modified by re-running the initialization wizard.

The procedure is the same as the procedure for the first settings. For details of the procedure see *Section 5.3.1: "Initialization Wizard"*.

When you re-run the initialization wizard, Storage Manager issues a message asking whether to stop monitoring of the target disk array by Storage Manager and to proceed with the initialization. Click **Yes** and stop monitoring of the disk array to modify the configuration.



Figure 8-4: Message Asking Whether to Stop Monitoring

### 8.2.4 Modifying the Disk Array Configuration

Each setting configured by the initialization wizard can be modified individually.

See *Table 8-1: Relation between the initialization wizard and configuration settings* to find how the settings configured in the initialization wizard and configuration settings are related.

Table 8-1: Relation between the initialization wizard and configuration settings

Setting in the initialization wizard	How to modify the setting
Set Disk Array Subsystem Name	Select Disk Array > Disk Array Management > Change of Settings.
Time Settings	Select Disk Array > Time Settings.
License Unlock	Select Disk Array > License Unlock.
Host Connection Port Parameters (FC)	Select <b>Disk Array &gt; Host Connection Port &gt; Host</b> <b>Connection Port Setting (FC)</b> .
Port Mode Switching	Select Disk Array > Host Connection Port > Port Mode Switching.

# 8.3 Modifying the Configuration by Storage Manager (iSCSI)

This section provides information on modifying the configuration of an iSCSI connected disk array by Storage Manager.

## 8.3.1 Binding Additional Logical Disks (iSCSI)

This section describes how to bind additional logical disks on an iSCSI connected disk array.

To bind additional logical disks on an iSCSI connected disk array, click **Configuration** and **Logical Disk**, and **Logical Disk Bind** on the left pane of the window.



Figure 8-5: Binding a Logical Disk (iSCSI)

For the details of the procedure after the startup, see Section 6.2.5: "Binding Logical Disk".

## 8.3.2 Using the Initialization Wizard to Modify the Configuration

The configuration can be modified by re-running the initialization wizard.

The procedure is the same as the procedure for the first settings. For details of the procedure see, *Section 6.2.1: "Initialization Wizard".* 

When you re-run the initialization wizard, Storage Manager issues a message asking whether to stop monitoring of the target disk array by Storage Manager and to proceed with the initialization. Click **Yes** and stop monitoring of the disk array to modify the configuration.



Figure 8-6: Message Asking Whether to Stop Monitoring

### 8.3.3 Modifying the Disk Array Configuration

Each setting configured by the initialization wizard can be modified individually.

See *Table 8-2: Relation between the initialization wizard and configuration settings* to find how the settings configured in the initialization wizard and configuration settings are related.

Setting in the initialization wizard	How to modify the setting
Set Disk Array Subsystem Name	Select Disk Array > Disk Array Management > Change of Settings.
Time Settings	Select Disk Array > Time Settings.
Setting host connection port parameters (iSCSI)	Select <b>Disk Array &gt; Host Connection Port &gt; Host</b> <b>Connection Port Settings (iSCSI)</b> .
Setting iSNS server	Select Disk Array > iSNS Server Settings.
License Unlock	Select Disk Array > License Unlock.

Table 8-2: Relation between the initialization wizard and configuration settings

This chapter provides information on troubles and what should be done for troubles.

In this chapter
"Troubleshooting According to Device Conditions" on page 210
"Network Setting Tool Errors" on page 217
"Storage Manager Errors" on page 218
"iSCSI Setup Tool Errors" on page 226
"StoreWay Multipath (Windows) Errors" on page 232
"StoreWay Multipath (Linux) Errors" on page 234
"Changing Network Settings for Monitoring Disk Arrays from Storage Manager" on page 236
"Troubleshooting at Installation" on page 237
"User Support" on page 241

## **9.1 Troubleshooting According to Device Conditions**

In this section, troubles are classified as follows, according to the location where the trouble occurs.

- 1. Trouble in disk array unit (front panel LED status): See *Table 9-1: Trouble in Disk Array Unit (Front Panel LED Status)*
- 2. Trouble in disk array unit (rear panel LED status): See *Table 9-2: Trouble in Disk Array Unit (Rear Panel LED Status)*
- 3. Trouble in disk enclosure (rear panel power LED status): See *Table 9-3: Trouble in Disk Enclosure* (*Rear Panel Power LED Status*)
- 4. Trouble in disk enclosure: See Table 9-4: Trouble in Disk Enclosure
- 5. Wrong SAS cable connection: See Table 9-5: Wrong SAS Cable Connection
- 6. Trouble in linkup of host port: See Table 9-6: Trouble in Linkup of Host Port

Condition	Cause and Action		
POWER LED (green) is	This is not a fault.		
on, and SERVICE LED (amber) is off	This indicates that the disk array unit is in normal operation after turning on.		
POWER LED (green) and SERVICE LED	This indicates the disk array unit power-on sequence has not been completed.		
(amber) are off	It takes several minutes for the POWER LED to turn on after turning on the unit.		
	If LEDs do not turn on within 10 minutes, check the following:		
	Confirm that power is being supplied to the unit.		
	Confirm that PS Status LED on the back of the unit is on in green. Otherwise, check the cable connection and power source.		
POWER LED (green) and SERVICE LED (amber) are on	This indicates that the disk array unit or connected disk enclosure requires maintenance. Since there are two or more maintenance requests at the same time, check all of the following:		
	Confirm that power is being supplied to both PS0 and PS1 in the disk array unit or connected disk enclosure.		
	To ensure that power is being supplied, confirm that POWER LEDs of the disk array unit and disk enclosure are on.		
	When SERVICE LED of the connected disk enclosure is on, refer to the description of "SERVICE LED is on".		
	When the last operation is maintenance, processing such as disk recovery may take time. Ask the maintenance personnel for the estimated time of completion. If the disk is not recovered beyond the estimated time, ask the maintenance personnel to investigate.		

#### Table 9-1: Trouble in Disk Array Unit (Front Panel LED Status)

Condition	Cause and Action			
POWER LED (green) is on and SERVICE LED (amber) blinks at intervals (on for 1 second and off for 1 second)	This indicates that the power-on sequence or download sequence of the disk array unit is in progress.			
	The sequence will take several minutes to complete.			
	If SERVICE LED continues to blink for over 10 minutes, there may be a failure.			
	WARNING Do not turn off the power or AC power while SERVICE LED is blinking.			
POWER LED (green) is on and SERVICE LED	This indicates that battery backup failed in the last power-off state. Files may be corrupted. Restore those files using backup files.			
(amber) blinks at intervals (on for 4 seconds and off for 8	This may occur because of the following causes. Address the appropriate cause to remove the problem.			
seconds)	1. A backup device such as a flash memory was destroyed. Replace the controller.			
	2. Battery backup was performed past the battery life span.			
	3. The disk array unit was continuously used or has been used at a temperature higher than the predetermined temperature.			
	<b>CAUTION</b> In the cases other than 1, the battery backup retention time of the battery cannot be guaranteed. It is necessary to replace the battery due to its life span. Contact your sales or maintenance service agent. (There is a charge for battery exchange due to life span.) For the procedure to recover from this condition, refer to Section 1.3.1.3: "Notes on Powering On the Disk Array System".			
POWER LED (green)	This is not a fault			
blinks at intervals (on for 0.2 seconds and off for 0.2 seconds), and SERVICE LED (amber) is off	This indicates that the disk array unit can be turned off by performing automatic flash because the host port is disconnecting for 5 minutes. When the host port recovers, the unit returns to a normal state.			

Table 9-1: Trouble in Disk Array Unit (Front Panel LED Status) (Contd.)

Condition	Cause and Action			
CONT READY LED	This indicates that the power-on sequence or rebooting is in progress.			
(green) is on, and CON I	The sequence will take several minutes to complete.			
off	If this condition continues for over 10 minutes, there may be a failure.			
CONT READY LED	This is not a fault.			
(green) blinks (on for 1 second and off for 1 second), and CONT FAULT LED (amber) is off	This indicates that the controller is in normal operation.			
CONT READY LED (green) blinks rapidly,	This indicates that power has been disrupted, or automatic shutdown or memory backup is being performed.			
and CONT FAULT LED	The sequence will take several minutes to complete.			
	If this condition continues for over 10 minutes, there may be a failure.			
CONT READY LED (green) is on, and CONT FAULT LED (amber) blinks (on for 1 second and off for 1 second)	This indicates that subsequent disk enclosures are not turned on. Turn on the disk enclosures.			
CONT READY LED (green) and CONT FAULT LED (amber) are on	This indicates that there is a maintenance request because a failure was detected. Analyze the error and then remove the cause.			
CONT READY LED (green) blinks (on for 1	The subsequent disk enclosures cannot be found, or the disk ports are disconnected.			
second and off for 1 second), and CONT FAULT LED (amber) is on	Check whether the cables are correctly connected to the disk ports.			
CONT READY LED	This is not a fault.			
(green) blinks (on for 1 second and off for 1 second), and CONT FAULT LED (amber) rapidly blinks	This indicates that device firmware is being updated. When updating is complete, the device returns to a normal state.			
BBU FAULT LED	This is not a fault.			
(amber) is on	The battery is being recharged.			

Table 9-2:	Trouble in	<b>Disk Array</b>	Unit (Rear	Panel LED	Status)
------------	------------	-------------------	------------	-----------	---------

Condition	Cause and Action		
LNK LED (green) of the management port is out, or blinks	When connecting a cable to the management port, LNK LED (green) may not turn on because of the following causes.		
	The power of the HUB, switch, or server to connect to has not been turned on.		
	The power supply of the HUB, switch, or server to connect to is at fault.		
	The cable type is wrong.		
	A cross cable and straight cable are not recognized automatically. Use a cable following the predetermined connection method.		
	The Speed and Duplex settings do not match.		
	Auto Detect is set as default. Since connecting to a device in Full Duplex mode could cause abnormal operation, set Auto Detect or Half Duplex to the device to connect.		
	(To set Full Duplex, ask your sales or maintenance service agent.)		
	Depending on the type of hub, it may remain off or it may blink.		
ACTIVE LED (Green/Amber) of the management port is on or blinks	This is not a fault.		
	ACTIVE LED (Green/Amber) is on when connection is established through the disk array unit monitoring protocol with a cable connected to the management port. If the cable is removed from the unit, ACTIVE LED briefly remains on.		

Table 9-2	Trouble in Disk Ar	rrav Unit (	Rear Panel I P	ED Status)	(Contd)
	HOUDIE III DISK AI	παγ Οπιτ (		_D Status)	(Conta.)

Table 9-3: Trouble in Disk Enclosure (Rear Panel Power LED Status)	Table 9-3:	Trouble in	<b>Disk Enclos</b>	ure (Rear Pane	el Power LE	) Status)
--------------------------------------------------------------------	------------	------------	--------------------	----------------	-------------	-----------

Condition	Cause and Action		
INPUT GOOD LED (green) is on, FAULT LED (amber) is off, and DC GOOD LED (green) is on	This is not a fault. This indicates that AC input is being supplied to the unit and DC output is in normal operation.		
INPUT GOOD LED	AC input is not being supplied.		
(green) is off.	Check whether the power supply cable is correctly connected. If the cable is correctly connected, replace the power supply.		
INPUT GOOD LED (green), FAULT LED (amber), and DC GOOD LED (green) are on	This indicates that the power fan error was detected or the temperature within the power supply reached the warning value. Replace the power supply.		
	CAUTIONThe unit has dual power supply configuration. Therefore, SERVICE LED turns on when FAULT LEDs of both PS0 and PS1 are on.		

Condition	Cause and Action		
INPUT GOOD LED	This is not a fault.		
(green) is on, FAULT LED (amber) is on, and DC GOOD LED (green) is off	This indicates that DC output error or temperature error within the power supply was detected.		
	CAUTION         The unit has a dual power supply configuration.           Therefore, SERVICE LED turns on when FAULT LEDs of both PS0 and PS1 are on.		
STANDBY GOOD LED	This is not a fault.		
(green) is on	The disk array unit is in standby state.		

Table 9-3:	Trouble in	Disk Enclos	ure (Rear P	anel Power I	LED Statu	is) (Contd.)
		DISK ENCIOS				is) (conta.)

Condition	Cause and Action		
POWER LED (green) is on, and SERVICE LED (amber) is off	This is not a fault.		
	This indicates that the disk enclosure is in normal operation after turning on.		
POWER LED (green) is off	This indicates that starting the disk enclosure has not been completed.		
	The power of the disk enclosure is turned on in conjunction with the power of the connected disk enclosure or disk array unit.		
	It takes several minutes until POWER LED of the disk enclosure turns on after turning on the unit power.		
	If POWER LED does not turn on within 10 minutes, check the following.		
	Check whether INPUT GOOD LED of the disk enclosure power supply is on, indicating that the power is supplied to the disk enclosure.		
	Check cable connection status to confirm whether this disk enclosure is normally connected to other disk enclosures or the disk array unit.		
	Check POWER LED of the disk array unit to confirm whether the power of the disk array unit was turned on. If this LED is out, check whether the power source is functioning normally.		
SERVICE LED (amber) is on	This indicates that the disk enclosure is out of order or maintenance has not been completed.		
	When the last operation is maintenance, processing such as disk recovery may take time. Ask the maintenance personnel for the estimated time of completion. If the disk is not recovered beyond the estimated time, ask the maintenance personnel to investigate.		

#### Table 9-4: Trouble in Disk Enclosure
Condition	Cause and Action
It is necessary to change the disk enclosure connection	If a pool, logical disk or spare has been built, it is necessary to release it before changing the connection.
	Turn off the disk array unit, and then change the SAS cable connection.
	Next, turn on the unit, and then wait until the unit is ready.
	Changing the SAS cable connection is then complete.

Condition	Cause and Action
Logical disk in disk array is not visible from application server (host).	There is possibility that "Data Rate" / "Server Connection Type" settings are inconsistent between disk array unit and device to be connected (host HBA / switch). Please confirm below. For details, refer to <i>Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the Optima X600</i> <i>series.</i>
Connection between the disk array and	1. Confirm Server Connection Type between application server (host)
destination (host/switch/RD port) does not linkup.	This disk array unit can use auto configuration by setting "Server Connection Type" to Auto Negotiate. But depending on settings of switch and host HBA to be connected, there are cases that connection
Connection between the disk array and destination	does not linkup or takes time. In such cases, reconfigure "Server Connection Type" appropriate to switch and host HBA to be connected.
(host/switch/RD port)	Direct Connection/FC-AL
takes time to linkup.	Select this option when you directly connect host connection port and application server (host) with FC cable or when you use Loop topology FC switch.
	FC Switch Connection (Fabric)
	Select this option when you connect to FC switch other than Loop topology FC switch.
	2. Confirm Data Rate
	This disk array unit can use auto configuration by setting "Data Rate" of host port to Auto Negotiate. But depending on settings of switch and host HBA to be connected, there are cases that connection does not linkup or takes time. In such cases, reconfigure "Data Rate" appropriate to switch and host HBA to be connected. For details of confirming and setting data rate of host HBA / FC switch, refer to manual of FC switch.
Connection between the disk array and destination (host/switch/RD port) does not linkup at the maximum data rate.	For the Optima1600 Series disk array units, the default data rate of the host port is Auto Negotiate. Therefore, automatic detection is performed.
	When connection between the disk array unit and the destination switch or host HBA cannot linkup at the maximum data rate by the disk array unit, use the maximum data rate supported by the switch or host HBA.

## Table 9-6: Trouble in Linkup of Host Port

# 9.2 Network Setting Tool Errors

Problem	Cause and Solution
The target disk array is not displayed	The network between the Network Setting Tool and the disk array may not be configured correctly. User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and the port number "2370" are used to find disk arrays. Check the network settings including the firewall settings, configure the settings to allow packets to travel through the network, and then try finding the disk array again.

# 9.3 Storage Manager Errors

# 9.3.1 Errors Experienced Throughout Storage Manager Usage

Problem	Cause and Solution
You cannot connect to the target disk array when Storage Manager client is started.	The IP addresses of the disk array specified may not be correct. Use the Network Setting Tool to confirm if the specified IP addresses of the disk array are correct. If these IP addresses are not correct, set the IP addresses again.
The window you have been working on is not visible.	The following factor is conceivable. Remove the factor and try your operation again.
	The window you have been working on may be hiding behind another window.
	Switch window by pressing ALT+TAB.
When access to the disk array is	The following causes are conceivable.
attempted from Storage Manager	JRE is not installed.
on the Web browser and the status bar, located at the bottom of the	Check JRE has been installed on the machine where Storage Manager Client runs. If not, install JRE according to the procedure described in .
	The security settings of the Web browser are not configured.
	Configure the Web browser settings by setting the URL of the connecting destination as trusted sites. Also configure the security level of trusted sites by selecting <b>Enable</b> under <b>Run ActiveX controls and plugins</b> of <b>ActiveX controls and plug-ins</b> . For details of the settings, <i>Section 4.5: "Starting Storage Manager Client"</i> .
	The network is congested.
	When Storage Manager Client (Web GUI) is started, it downloads files required for its operation from the disk array. Depending on the network traffic, it may take time. Wait for a few minutes for the download to complete.
When access to the disk array is attempted from Storage Manager Client (Web GUI), the message "Warning - Security" is shown.	This message indicates the digital signature of Storage Manager Client has been successfully verified. Check the name is "StorageManager" and the publisher is "Bull SAS", and then click <b>Run</b> .
	If you select the <b>Always trust content from this publisher</b> check box and then click <b>Run</b> , the message will not be shown the next time you start Storage Manager Client.
When access to the disk array is attempted from Storage Manager Client (Web GUI), the <b>Windows</b> <b>Security Alert</b> dialog box tells a Web browser function is blocked	The function is blocked by a firewall. Click <b>Unblock</b> on the dialog box or configure the firewall settings in advance so that your Web browser is not blocked.

Problem	Cause and Solution
When access to the disk array is attempted from Storage Manager Client (Web GUI), the Java icon continues to be shown on the Web browser window and the login	The connection may fail when your Web browser is configured to go through a proxy server. In this case, configure the proxy exception of the Web browser so that disk array is connected without going through a proxy server. Follow the steps below.
window does not appear.	Perform Step 1 through 3 only when Internet Explorer is used.
	<ol> <li>Click Control Panel, and Internet Options. On the Connections tab click LAN Settings to open the LAN Settings dialog box.</li> </ol>
	2. If the <b>Use a proxy server</b> check box is not selected, the following procedure is not necessary. If this check box is selected, click <b>Advanced</b> to open the <b>Proxy Settings</b> dialog box.
	3. Add both the host name and the IP address to the <b>Do not</b> use proxy server for addresses beginning with box.
	Steps from 4 should be performed if your browser is Internet Explorer or Firefox.
	4. Follow the steps below to check the JRE proxy settings
	Select <b>Control Panel</b> , <b>Java</b> and <b>Network Setting</b> to see whether the <b>User browser settings</b> check box has been selected. If not, click <b>Advanced</b> to add both the host name and the IP address of the connecting destination to the <b>Exceptions</b> box.
	5.Exit and restart Web browsers.

Problem	Cause and Solution
When startup of Storage Manager Client (Web GUI) is attempted, it does not start and the message [00008-04] is shown.	The following causes are conceivable. Check the machine experiencing the problem.
	Protected mode is enabled.
	If Internet Explorer 7 or later is used as a Web browser and the protected mode is enabled, starting Storage Manager Client fails. Follow the steps below to disable the protected mode.
	1.Select Control Panel and Internet Options. Click the Security tab.
	2.Click to clear <b>Enabled Protected Mode</b> check box of the zone where the URL of the connecting destination (trusted site) is set.
	3.Exit and restart the Web browsers you are using, and then try starting Storage Manager Client (Web GUI) again.
	JRE security policy has been modified.
	Installing another product may change the JRE security policy and affect startup of Storage Manager Client (Web GUI).
	The JRE security policy is defined by the following file.
	<jre folder="" installation="">\lib\security\java.security</jre>
	If this is the cause of the problem, follow the steps below to change the security policy.
	Note that the change does not affect any behavior of products other than Storage Manager Client (Web GUI).
	1.Copy the iSMClient.policy file in the CD-ROM shipped with the product to the following folder.
	<jre folder="" installation="">\ lib\security\bull</jre>
	You must create the bull folder because it does not exist by default.
	The iSMClient.policy file is located in the following folder of the CD-ROM.
	\Storage_Manager_Software_For_Windows\ Client\WINDOWS\iSMClient.policy
	2.Rewrite the first line in the "iSMClient.policy" file that has been copied by the IP address (host name) and the port number of the connecting destination.
	3.Add the following line indicated by the * mark to the java.security file located in the following folder.

Problem	Cause and Solution
	<pre><jre folder="" installation="">\lib\security\java.security</jre></pre>
	policy.url.1=file
	policy.url.2=file
	<pre>policy.url.<no>=file:\${java.home}/lib/ security/bull/iSMClient.policy * </no></pre>
While a controllar failure conversit	<pre><no> is.</no></pre>
takes time from 20 minutes to 30	A controller failure may cause the delay of processes.
minutes to process the configuration of the disk array from Storage Manager Client.	Configure the disk array after restoration of the controller.
	failure occurs, take the following measure:
	<ul> <li>When Storage Manager Express is being used</li> <li>Configure the disk array by using CLI (Command Line Interface).</li> <li>For details of CLI, see Storage Manager Command Reference.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>When Storage Manager is being used</li> <li>Remove once the IP address of the faulty controller from a monitoring target of Storage Manager, and restart the server.</li> <li>Add the IP address again after restoration of the</li> </ul>
	controller, and restart Storage Manager Server.

## 9.3.2 Errors in Initialization

Problem	Cause and Solution
Configuring any the following failed.	It is conceivable that a disk array problem or communication
Setting disk array subsystem name.	error between the disk array and a client has occurred.
	Check if the disk array or the client has a problem. Fix the problem and then perform initialization again.
Setting the time (synchronization with the NTP server)	
Setting the time (manually)	
Unlocking a license	
<ul> <li>Setting host connection port (iSCSI)</li> </ul>	
Setting iSNS server	
Setting host connection port (FC)	
Port mode switching	
An error occurred in the completion page of the initialization.	This problem may occur when the next generation Java plug-in is not disabled.
	See Section 4.5.1: "Before Starting Storage Manager Client" to disable the next generation Java plug-in, and then perform the initialization again.
Whenever Storage Manager is started, the dialog prompting to start	This problem occurs when initialization is not completed successfully.
initialization is displayed.	Start the initialization wizard and complete it successfully.

## 9.3.3 Errors in Pool Binding

Problem	Cause and Solution
Pool binding failed.	It is conceivable that a disk array problem or communication error between the disk array and the client has occurred.
	Check if the disk array or the client has a problem.
	Fix the problem and then select Pool on the tree of the main screen to check the list of pools.
	1. If there is no newly bound pool, try pool bind again.
	<ol> <li>If there is any newly bound pool, right-click the pool to check its properties.</li> </ol>
	a. If the status of the pool is normal and physical disks are displayed on the list of physical disks without any problem, the pool has been bound successfully. You do not need to bind the pool again.
	<ul> <li>b. If the status of the pool is not normal or physical disks are not displayed on the list of physical disks, the pool is bound abnormally. Use the configuration menu to unbind the pool and then bind the pool again.</li> </ul>
Creating a system volume failed.	It is conceivable that a disk array problem or communication error between the disk array and the client has occurred.
	Check if the disk array or any client has a problem.
	Fix the problem and then click <b>Monitor</b> and <b>Fault</b> <b>Information</b> on the main screen to see the Fault Information window.
	<ol> <li>When a message "System area (Logical disk number) has become fault." is displayed, delete the system volume by selecting Logical Disk and Logical Disk Unbind. Create a system volume by selecting Logical Disk and Logical Disk Bind (for system).</li> </ol>
	<ol> <li>When a message "Storage System Volume (System Volume) is not built." is displayed, create a system volume by selecting Logical Disk and Logical Disk Bind (for system).</li> </ol>
	If neither of the messages (a) and (b) is reported, the system volume is successfully created. You do not need to re-create it.

## 9.3.4 Errors in Hot Spare Binding

Problem	Cause and Solution
Hot spare binding failed.	It is conceivable that a disk array problem or communication error between the disk array and the client has occurred.
	Check if the disk array or any client has a problem.
	Fix the problem and then click physical disk on the main screen to see the list of physical disks.
	If the physical disk on which hot spare binding has been performed is categorized as "not set", try hot spare binding again. If the physical disk on which hot spare binding has been performed is categorized as Hot Spare, binding hot spare is successfully completed. You do not need to perform hot spare binding again.

## 9.3.5 Errors in Logical Disk Binding

Problem	Cause and Solution
Logical disk binding failed.	It is conceivable that a disk array problem or communication error between the disk array and the client has occurred.
	Check if the disk array or the client has a problem.
	Fix the problem and then select Logical Disk on the tree of the main screen to check the list of logical disks. If all the logical disks specified in logical disk binding are bound, the logical disk binding has been completed successfully. You do not need to perform the logical disk binding again. If any logical disk specified in the logical disk binding is not bound, perform the logical disk binding again.

## 9.3.6 Errors in Retrieving Host Information

Problem	Cause and Solution
Automatic collection of host	The following causes are conceivable.
host is shown.	<ol> <li>FC cables between the disk array and hosts are not connected correctly.</li> </ol>
	<ol><li>Storage Manager Agent Utility is not installed on the hosts or the hosts are not running.</li></ol>
	3. The command has not been executed on Linux hosts.
	Check the following, fix the problem, and then try collecting the host information again.
	1. Check the disk array and hosts are connected correctly with direct connection or via FC switches. Check the host ports connectivity and accessibility.
	<ol> <li>Install Storage Manager Agent Utility on the hosts, start running the hosts and try collecting the host information again.</li> </ol>
	3. For the Linux hosts, you need to open the window to register the host information and run the iSMcc_hostinfo -store command on the hosts. After running the command, click Show collected information.

# 9.3.7 Assigning Logical Disk Errors

Problem	Cause and Solution
Assigning logical disks failed.	It is conceivable that a disk array unit problem or communication error between the disk array and the client has occurred. Check if the disk array unit or the client has a problem. Fix the problem and then perform assigning logical disks again.

# 9.4 iSCSI Setup Tool Errors

## 9.4.1 iSCSI Setup Tool (Windows) Errors

Problem	Cause and Solution
The message, "The tool has already been started." is displayed and the iSCSI Setup Tool cannot be started.	The iSCSI Setup Tool is already up and running.
	Click <b>OK</b> to close the error message and terminate the running iSCSI Setup Tool. Then, start the iSCSI Setup Tool again.
The message, "The host name should be up to 15 characters in	Change the host name using only alphanumeric characters or hyphen (-) based on the restrictions of creating a target.
length. A host name can include alphanumeric characters and hyphens(-)." is displayed and the iSCSI Setup Tool cannot be started.	Click <b>OK</b> to close the error message. After changing the host name, restart the iSCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "Failed to collect the	An error occurred in retrieving the serial number.
serial number. (Error code:xxxx)" is	Click <b>OK</b> to close the error message.
cannot be started.	For details, see <i>Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes"</i> .
The message, "The tool is not set	The iSCSI Setup Tool is not installed correctly.
correctly." is displayed and the iSCSI Setup Tool cannot be started.	Click <b>OK</b> to close the error message. Re-install the iSCSI Setup Tool and start it again.
The message, "No management port of the disk array is set." is displayed	The management port settings of the disk array are not configured.
and the iSCSI Setup Tool cannot be started.	Click <b>OK</b> to close the error message. Set the management port and start the iSCSI Setup Tool again.
The message, "An error occurred	An error occurred during output of the log file.
while reporting a log file. (Error	Click <b>OK</b> to terminate the iSCSI Setup Tool.
code.xxxx) is displayed.	For details, see <i>Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes</i> ".
The message, "Unexpected error	An unexpected error occurred.
occurred." is displayed.	Click <b>OK</b> to terminate the iSCSI Setup Tool.
	Do not close the error message, generate the user dump, the event log and the log file, and contact your maintenance service provider.
When a serial number is entered, the	The host post connection settings are not configured.
the disk array is set." is displayed.	See Section 6.2.1: "Initialization Wizard" to perform the initialization to configure the host connection port settings. Then, run the iSCSI Setup Tool again.

Problem	Cause and Solution
When a serial number is entered, the message, "The target has already been assigned to the initiator. Serial number =" is displayed.	The target with the initiator already exists.
	To register the initiator again, delete the LD set to which the initiator was added by using the LD Set management of the iSM client, and then run the iSCSI Setup Tool again.
When a serial number is entered, the	An error occurred in retrieving the disk array information.
message, "Failed to collect the disk array information. (Error code:xxxx)" is displayed.	For details, see Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes".
When you click Logon, the message, "Please enter a target secret." is displayed.	The CHAP authentication check box is selected but information for Target secret and Target secret again is not entered.
	Enter information in the Target secret and the Target secret again boxes.
When you click Logon, the message, "Target secret unmatch. Please enter the target secret again." is displayed.	The information entered in the Target secret does not match with that of the Target secret again.
	Re-enter information in the Target secret and the Target secret again boxes.
When you click Logon, the message, "Please enter a CHAP secret." is displayed.	The Mutual CHAP authentication check box is selected but information for the CHAP secret and CHAP secret again is not entered.
	Enter information in the CHAP secret and the CHAP secret again boxes.
When you click Logon, the message, "CHAP secret unmatch. Please enter	The information entered in the CHAP secret does not match with that of the CHAP secret again.
the CHAP secret again." is displayed.	Re-enter information in the CHAP secret and the CHAP secret again boxes.
When you click Logon, the message,	An error occurred in logging on to the target.
"Logon Failed.(Error code." is displayed.	For details, see Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes".

## 9.4.2 iSCSI Setup Tool (Linux) Errors

Problem	Cause and Solution
The message, "File not found." is	A file that is specified as a parameter file does not exist.
displayed.	Specify the file name correctly.
The message, "iSCSI Initiator is not installed." is displayed.	iSCSI Initiator is not installed.
	Install iSCSI Initiator, start the service, and then re-start iSCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "The parameter is invalid." is displayed.	The format of IP addresses of host connection ports specified in the parameter file is invalid.
	Modify the parameter file and re-start the iSCSI Setup Tool.

Problem	Cause and Solution
The message, "No parameter is set." is displayed.	Valid parameters are not entered in the parameter file.
	Modify the parameter file and re-start ISCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "Please enter serial	A serial number is not entered in the parameter file.
	Modify the parameter file and re-start iSCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "Please enter target IP address." is displayed.	The IP addresses of host connection ports are not specified in the parameter file.
	Modify the parameter file and re-start iSCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "Please enter the target CHAP secret." is displayed.	The target CHAP secret is specified but no CHAP initiator secret is specified in the parameter file.
	Modify the parameter file and re-start iSCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "The tool has already	The iSCSI Setup Tool is already is up and running.
been started." is displayed.	Terminate the running iSCSI Setup Tool, and then restart it.
The message, "Invalid host name." is displayed.	A character other than alphanumeric characters or hyphen (-) is used for a server host name.
	Change the host name using only alphanumeric characters or hyphen (-) based on the restrictions of creating target.
	After changing the host name, restart the iSCSI Setup Tool.
The message, "Failed to collect the	An error occurred in retrieving the serial number.
serial numbers. Error code:xxxx" is displayed.	For details, see <i>Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes"</i> .
The message, "No management port of the disk array is not set." is displayed.	The management port settings are not configured to the disk array.
	Set the management port and start the iSCSI Setup Tool again.
The message, "Host connection ports	The host post connection settings are not configured.
of the disk array are not set." is displayed.	See Section 6.2.1: "Initialization Wizard" to perform the initialization to configure the host connection port settings. Then, run the iSCSI Setup Tool again.
The message, "The target has	The target which is assigned to initiators already exists.
already been assigned to the initiator." is displayed.	To register the initiator again, delete the LD Set to which the initiator was added by using the LD Set management of the iSM client, and then run the iSCSI Setup Tool again.
The message, "Failed to collect the host port information. Error	An error occurs in a process of retrieving the disk array information.
code:xxxx" is displayed.	For details, see <i>Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes"</i> .
The message, "Failed to log on to the	An error occurred in logging on to the target.
target. Error code:xxxx" is displayed.	For details, see <i>Section 9.4.3: "iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes"</i> .

## 9.4.3 iSCSI Setup Tool Error Codes

iSCSI Setup Tool reports how commands have run and error messages to the following log file.

#### Windows

%iSMvol%\etc\trace\iSMiSCSISetup.log

#### Linux

/opt/iSMvol/etc/trace/iSMiSCSISetup.log

1. Error in log file output

[Format]

The error occurred when the log file was output.(Error code:xxxx)

The error is reported by retrieving the error code at the time of executing Windows API function through the GetLastError function.

2. Errors in collecting the serial number.

[Formats]

Windows

Failed to collect the serial number.(Error code:xxxx)

Linux

Failed to collect the serial numbers. Error code:xxxx

Error Codes	Cause
108	The IP address you have specified is used by another network equipment.
109	Target resource does not exist.
110	The disk array you have specified is being used by another tool.
111	There are multiple disk arrays with the same serial number.
112	Disk array could not be found.
201	System call failed.
202	Configuring IP address failed.
203	An internal error occurred.

3. Errors in collecting disk array information and logon.

[Formats]

#### Windows

Failed to collect the disk array information.(Error code:xxxx) Logon Failed.(Error code:xxxx)

#### Linux

Failed to collect the host port information. Error code:xxxx

Failed to log on to the target. Error code:xxxx

a. Errors in accessing the disk array

Error Codes	Cause
iSM31001	A command is running.
iSM31002	An unknown error occurred.
iSM31003	Invalid option value.
iSM31004	System call failed.
iSM31005	Connection to Storage Manager failed.
iSM31006	Connection to disk array failed.
iSM31007	Invalid host is specified.
iSM31008	Starting configuration settings failed.
iSM31009	The maximum number of connection.
iSM31010	Storage Manager server version does not match.
iSM31011	File open error.
iSM31012	File load error.
iSM31013	File write error.
iSM31014	File close error.
iSM31015	The disk array is being configured for settings.
iSM31016	Invalid file format.
iSM31017	Invalid command name.
iSM31018	Invalid sub-command name.
iSM31019	Invalid character sting is specified.
iSM31020	Finishing settings of configuration failed.
iSM31021	Closing the socket failed.
iSM31022	The specified OS is not supported.
iSM31023	Shortage of required options.
iSM31024	Restriction on the logical disk number (LDN) specified in the system area.
iSM31025	The maximum number of options have been exceeded.
iSM31026	Duplicated option.
iSM31027	An invalid related option has been specified.
iSM31028	Invalid option name.
iSM31029	Configuration settings are not started.
iSM31031	Unlocking licenses are not done.
iSM31044	The disk array does not support creation of LD set.
iSM31056	Upper limit of LD set creation.
iSM31057	The specified LD set name is invalid.
iSM31058	The specified LD set is not found.

Error Codes	Cause
iSM31059	The specified LD set exists.
iSM31060	The specified platform is not supported.
iSM31061	Operation on invalid partition.
iSM31098	Partition status has been updated.
iSM31108	The specified LD set is locked.
iSM31147	The specified platform is not supported.
iSM31150	The specified initiator set is set to another LD set.
iSM31151	The specified LD set is being used.
iSM31152	Upper limit of initiator addition.
iSM31174	Exception occurred during transmission.
iSM31175	Timeout occurred with connection to Storage Manager.
iSM31208	Specified LD set is designated for FC.
iSM31212	The platform of LD set does not match that of initiator.

#### b. Other errors

Error Codes	Cause
-	An error occurred in Iscsicli or iscsiadm command.
	(Refer to the log file for the detail on the error.
Time Out	Timeout occurred while running a command.
Service Error	An error occurred during service startup.
	(Refer to the log file for the detail on the error.)
SSH Error	Error occurred during the process of SSH.
	(Refer to the log file for the detail on the error.)

# 9.5 StoreWay Multipath (Windows) Errors

Problem	Cause and Solution
The SPS command /lun, -getlun failed.	When no paths are recognized by SPS, the following error may occur when the SPS command is executed.
	> spsadmin /lun
	"Operation failed."
	When this error occurs, check:
	Whether the installed HBA driver is appropriate and it is installed correctly. Refer to the installation manual of the HBA driver, and reinstall a HBA driver supported by the OS and the servers it will be installed.
	Whether settings of the disk array unit, including the access control and the cross call, and the FC switch settings are configured correctly.
	If the problem persists even after checking and performing above mentioned, please contact the Support Service.
Only one path is detected after the SPS command /lun, -getlun is run.	Check the following:
	Whether the FC cables are connected correctly. Connect the FC cables again.
The number of devices shown under	When this error occurs, check:
the disk drive of the device manager is smaller than expected.	Whether the installed HBA driver is appropriate and it is installed correctly. Refer to the installation manual of the HBA driver, and reinstall a HBA driver supported by the OS and the servers it will be installed.
	Whether settings of the disk array unit, including the access control and the cross call, and the FC switch settings are configured correctly.
	If the problem persists even after checking and performing above mentioned, please contact the Support Service.

Problem	Cause and Solution
Event ID280 (spsdsm) is generated in the system event log.	Check if the configuration of connections between the servers and the disk array unit has been changed due to an event such as replacement of an HBA or reconnection of an FC cable. Delete the old configuration information by running spsadmin/deletemissing.
Event ID10 (WinMgmt/WMI) is generated in the application event log.	This event is generated due to the specification of the SPS, and is not indication of abnormality. This does not affect the operation of the system.
	Source: WinMgmt (Case of Windows Server 2003)
	WMI (Case of Windows Server 2008)
	EventID: 10
	Type: Error
	Description:
	Event filter with query "select * from SPN_EVENTENTRY" could not be (re)activated in namespace "//./root/WMI" because of error 0x80041010. Events may not be delivered through this filter until the problem is corrected.
	Or,
	Event filter with query "select * from NEC_MAM_EVENTENTRY" could not be (re)activated in namespace "//./root/WMI" because of error 0x80041010. Events may not be delivered through this filter until the problem is corrected.

# 9.6 Changing Network Settings for Monitoring Disk Arrays from Storage Manager

If a disk array cannot be monitored correctly from Storage Manager due to faults occurring in performing initialization or erroneous settings, network settings must be changed.

Change disk array network settings using any of the following two procedures.

Whether the disk array or management server must be changed is noted in the summary of each setting. Make changes after taking into account their effect on business.



1. Changing Network Setting from Storage Manager

If the disk array is monitored from Storage Manager, the disk array unit network settings can be changed from Storage Manager.

Make changes using [Configuration] - [Disk Array] - [Management Port Settings] from the menu. For details, refer to the *Storage Manager Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI) for the Optima X600 Series*.

2. Changing Network Setting from Network Setting Tool

The disk array unit network settings can be changed from Network Setting Tool. For details, see *Section 4.3.2: "Configuring IP Addresses by Using Network Setting Tool"*.

# 9.7 Troubleshooting at Installation

If the iSCSI port of the disk array cannot be set or the disk cannot be recognized by the host when installing the disk array, check the disk array settings following the procedure described below.

# 9.7.1 The IP Address of the iSCSI Port cannot be set on the Storage Manager Initialization Wizard.

The same IP address cannot be set to multiple iSCSI ports in a disk array. If an IP address conflict occurred when setting an IP address, specify a unique IP address to each iSCSI port.

# 9.7.2 The logical disks of the disk array cannot be recognized by the host, or an error message is displayed

The following figure shows the confirmation procedure. First, execute ping to the iSCSI port of the disk array from the iSCSI port of the host (the appropriate NIC of software initiator), and check whether ping is successfully sent. For details about how to send ping, refer to the PING communication method of each OS.



1. Checking the iSCSI port settings

If the disk array did not correspond to ping, check (1)-1 and (1)-2. After checking them, go to the steps described below:

- □ When using iSNS: (2) Checking iSNS
- Uhen not using iSNS: (3) Checking the LD Set settings of the disk array
- 1-1. Checking linkup

Check the port to which the disk array and connected devices such as a host and switch are connected is correctly linkup.

Check method

The Link LED of the iSCSI port of the disk array is lit, the port is linkup. If the port is not linkup, check which of the following (a to c) is the LED status of the port.



When the Ready LED of the controller is not blinking, the disk array is not online. Check the following when the disk array is online.

- a. The Link LED and Active LED blink twice every two seconds The iSCSI settings such as an IP address and subnet mask of the port have not been set, or they are invalid. Specify the iSCSI settings again by using the Storage Manager initialization wizard. It is thought that Node Name (WWnn) of the disk array has not been set. If the LEDs are still blinking, after the iSCSI settings of the port have been correctly specified, check the Node Name of the disk array is correctly set.
- b. The Link LED and Active LED blink once every two seconds The port is offline. Check whether the disk array is being shut down.
- c. The Link LED and Active LED are not lit In the case of 10Gbps iSCSI, check whether the connected devices such as a host and switches support 10Gbps, or whether they are normally running. In the case of 1Gbps iSCSI, the LEDs are not linkup when the link speed is not 1Gbps. Check whether the transfer rate of the connected devices such as a host and switches is 1Gbps, or whether they are normally running. If the connected devices are normally running, check the cable connection.
- 1-2. Checking the connection and settings

a. Checking the cable connection

Check whether the cable connection between the host and disk array, including switches is correct.

- b. Checking the IP address and other settings of the connected devices Check the IP address and subnet mask settings of the connected devices including the host.
   For the checking method, refer to the manual of the host.
- c. Checking the connection devices such as switches When the host and disk array are connected via a switch, check the switch settings. For the checking method, refer to the manual of the switch.
- 2. Checking iSNS

When iSNS is used and the disk array and host information cannot be applied to the iSNS server, check the following. When iSNS is not used, or the problem has been corrected, go to 3. "Checking the LD Set settings of the disk array".

#### Check items

- Check whether the iSNS server-related connection between the host and disk array is correct.
- Check whether the iSNS server-related IP addresses of the host and disk array are correct, and whether the TCP port number is correct.

For how to change the iSNS settings of the disk array, refer to the manual of Storage Manager.

- Be sure to specify the number of the following registered ports for the port number.
  - iSCSI port: 3260 (The iSCSI port number of the Optima3600 series disk array is defined to this number.)
  - □ iSNS port: 3205 (Specify the iSNS port number from Storage Manager.)

#### 3. Checking the LD Set settings of the disk array

Check the Access Control and CHAP authentication settings of the disk array. After checking and changing the settings, go to 4. "Checking the host settings".

#### LD Set log collection method

After collecting the LD Set information by using Storage Manager, check the settings below. For how to collect the LD Set information, refer to the manual of Storage Manager.

- (3)-1 Checking the settings related to Access Control
- a. Check that the initiator name set to the LD Set is the same as that of the host.
- b. Check that the IP address of the iSCSI port of the disk array, which has been set to the LD Set, is correct.
- c. Check that the logical disks assigned to the host as an LD Set is correct.
- (3)-2 Checking the CHAP authentication settings

Check whether CHAP is enabled or disabled by referring to the CHAP authentication / bidirectional CHAP authentication settings of the initiator (host) and Storage Manager. For how to change the settings of Storage Manager, refer to the manual of Storage Manager.

#### 4. Checking the host settings

Check the following iSCSI settings of the host.

(4)-1 Checking the iSCSI parameter settings of the host

Check that the iSCSI settings of the host, including the initiator name, CHAP, and target portal, are correct.



If the port number can be selected for the target specification settings of iSCSI initiator, including an IP address and subnet mask, use the default port number (3260).

(4)-2 Checking the multi-session settings of the host

Check that the login setting of the host is not set to multi-session. For how to check the login setting, refer to the manual of the host (software initiator).

#### Multi-session

If logging in to the same IP address (iSCSI port) of the disk array twice from the hosts with the same name, the first login connection is disconnected.

**Example:** In the case of iSCSI Initiator on Windows Server 2003, if the same target is specified to Persistent Targets twice or more

If the Automatically restore this connection when the system boots check box is selected at login, the target is registered to the Persistent Targets tab of the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator dialog box.

If the same target logs in to the disk array twice or more by specifying the same IP address, the duplicated list is set to Persistent Targets, and the system enters a multi-session. If a duplicated Target-IPaddress pair exists in Persistent Targets, delete the duplicated pair.

For details, refer to the manual of Microsoft iSCSI Initiator.

(4)-3 Checking whether the host logged in target on the disk array

Check whether the host is logging in the target on the disk array. For how to check, refer to the manual of the host (software initiator). If the host is not logging in the target, check whether the host is set to log in the target on the disk array.

For iSCSI Initiator software, it is possible to specify whether to automatically reconnect to the host after rebooting the host. If the logical disk cannot recognized after rebooting the host, check whether the automatic recognition settings are appropriate.

5. When the error cause cannot be identified

Prepare the items described in Section 9.9.2: "Before You Call", and then contact Bull SAS sales, the sales agent from whom you purchased the disk array unit, or your maintenance service agent.

# 9.8 User Support

## 9.8.1 Unit Life Span and Maintenance Period

The unit life span and maintenance periods after production ends for the disk array unit are as follows.

Parts used in the disk array unit include parts that must be replaced due to their life spans (such as cooling fans, batteries, and disk drives).

Since life spans may be shorter than five years depending on the environment in which the disk array unit is used, it is recommended that parts be replaced regularly. Contact your maintenance service agent regarding replacements and life spans.

- Unit life span: 5 years
- Maintenance period: 5 years after production ends

Note that repair may not be possible in the cases below. Moreover, a fee may be charged even if within the warranty period.

- Stained goods, dropped goods, goods damaged by mishandling
- Goods damaged by mishandling in storage or shipping
- Items altered by the user
- Items whose life spans are over
- Goods damaged by earthquake, lightning, fire, or other natural disaster, and goods damaged due to an accident or other external cause

#### Life Spans of Parts

- Fan (power supply): 50,000 hours
- Disk drive: 5 years

#### Consumables

Battery



The battery life span becomes shorter when it is used in high temperatures environments.

The life span is about 5 years when used under an ambient temperature of 25 degree celsius(77°F), but will be reduced to approximately half (about 2.5 years) at an ambient temperature of 35 degree celsius(95°F). In addition, as backup frequency increases, the battery life span becomes shorter. The life span above is calculated considering accidental power disconnection such as power outage.

## 9.8.2 Before You Call

Before you call to clarify your queries or consult on a failure or abnormality of a disk array unit, the following items should be available.

- The warranty and this user guide.
- Conditions of the fault or abnormality, notes on content of questions.
- Notes on the unit configuration and software used on it.

(Use the troubleshooting information sheet on the following page and the checksheet found in *Appendix I: "LED Inspection Checksheet"*)

- Notes on the configuration of the connection of the host unit to the disk array unit and the configuration of peripheral equipment connected to the host unit.
- Manuals for the host unit and peripheral equipment connected to the host unit and manuals of software used.

	Troubleshooting Information Sheet		
1.	Write down the model and serial number of the disk array unit. You can find them on the nameplate.		
	MODEL:		
	SER.NO:		
2.	Confirm the following.		
	Number of installed drive enclosures:		
	Number of installed disks:		
3.	Do you use UPS? What model?		
4.	Do you use a power coupling unit or PMAN? What model?		
5.	Are the following LEDs of the controller enclosure on?		
	Yes/No/Blinking		
6.	Are the following LEDs of the drive enclosure on?		
	Yes/No/Blinking		

## 9.8.3 Contacts for questions and consultation

For questions and consultation about the disk array unit, contact Bull sales, the sales agent from whom you purchased it, or your maintenance service agent.

The specifications of the disk array are shown below.

	StoreWay Optima3600
Host interface	(A) Fibre channel (FC-AL / Fabric)
	Maximum transfer rate: 8 Gbps
	(B) iSCSI interface
	Maximum transfer rate: 1 Gbps
	Maximum transfer rate: 10 Gbps (Fibre)
	(C) SAS interface
	Maximum transfer rate: 6 Gbps
HPEs per unit	2 (initial)
	4 (when HPE added)
	(A) 4
Number of host ports per CONT	(B) 2
	(C) 2
Cache memory capacity per unit	12 GB, 24 GB, or 48 GB
Backup time for cache memory	Unlimited
DEs per unit	3.5-inch DE: Max. 32 (max. 8 per port)
	2.5-inch DE: Max. 16 (max. 4 per port)
Number of disk drives	3 to 384 (max. 96 per port)
Disk drive	3.5-inch SAS (15Krpm): 300 GB, 450 GB, 600 GB (standard), 600 GB (encryption)
	3.5-inch NL-SAS (7.2Krpm): 1 TB, 2 TB
	3.5-inch SSD: 400 GB
	2.5-inch SAS (10Krpm): 300 GB, 450 GB, 600 GB
	(standard), 600 GB (encryption)
	2.5-Inch NL-SAS (7.2KIPIII). TTB 2.5 inch SSD: 10.0GBR
Diek interface	
	SAS: Maximum transfer rate: 6 Gbps
RAID type	RAID-10, 50, 60, TM

RAID type	RAID components	Number of disk drives	Storage efficiency
RAID-10	(1D+1D)× n	2 or more	50%
RAID-50	(2D+P)× n	3 or more	66%
	(4D+P)× n	5 or more	80%
	(8D+P)× n	9 or more	88%
RAID-60	(4D+PQ)× n	6 or more	66%
	(8D+PQ)× n	10 or more	80%
RAID-TM	1D+1D+1D	3	33%

Table A-2: Specifications - RAID Configurations

Specifications of the RAID configurations are shown below.



It is recommended that you use disk drives of the same capacity and rotational frequency for RAID systems.

D refers to data disk; P and Q refer to parity disks.

n is an integer greater than 1.

# Appendix B How to Set/Check Application Server (Windows) (FC)

This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the Windows environment, when the disk array is configured for the FC connection.

# **B.1 Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility**

This section describes how to install Storage Manager Agent Utility.

## **B.1.1 Before Installation**

Note the followings before installing the Storage Manager Agent Utility. The following functions become available by installing the Storage Manager Agent Utility.

- iSM volume list command.
- Host agent (Host information collection command and host agent service) (*1)
- iSCSI Setup Tool (*2)
- Storage Manager Host Register Agent (*3)
  - □ *1 Available in Windows Server 2003 SP 1 or later environments.
  - □ *2 Available in Windows Server 2008 or later environments.
  - □ *3 Available in Windows Server 2003 or later environments.

Table B-1 shows the supported operating environment

.

Operating systems	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (SP0 to SP2) (*1)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition (SP0, SP2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition (SP0, SP2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (SP0, SP2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (SP0 to SP2) (*1)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (SP0, SP2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition (SP0, SP2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (SP0, SP2)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems
	(SP0 to SP2) (*1) (*5)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Standard (SP0, SP2) (*2) (*3) (*4)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (SP0, SP1) (*2) (*4)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Enterprise (SP0, SP2) (*2) (*3) (*4)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (SP0, SP1) (*2) (*4)
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 for Itanium-based Systems (SP0, SP2) (*5)
	(*1) To use the host information collection function included in Storage Manager Agent Utility, SP1 or SP2 must be applied on this OS.
	(*2) The product without Hyper-V function is also supported.
	(*3) The Server Core install option is not supported.
	(*4) The iSCSI Setup Tool (sharing function) can be used on the Optima X600 series disk arrays. This tool supports Windows Server 2008 or later. The 32-bit version of Java Runtime Environment (JRE) must be installed to use this function.
	(*5) The Optima X600 series does not support Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems, and Microsoft Windows Server 2008 for Itanium-based Systems.

## Table B-1: Operating Environment (Windows)

Memory	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition
	OS required memory + 10 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition
	OS required memory + 10 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Standard x64 Edition
	OS required memory + 12 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition
	OS required memory + 12 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition
	OS required memory + 10 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition
	OS required memory + 10 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition
	OS required memory + 12 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition
	OS required memory + 12 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems
	OS required memory + 37 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Standard
	OS required memory + 10 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Enterprise
	OS required memory + 10 MB or more
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 for Itanium-based Systems
	OS required memory + 37 MB or more
Disk capacity	20 MB or more

#### Table B-1: Operating Environment (Windows)

* Above are the supported environments for this version at the point of the initial shipment of this product.

## **B.1.2 Installation**

Use Storage Manager Setup to install the Storage Manager Agent Utility.

Storage Manager Setup starts automatically when the Storage Manager Express Setup and Utility CD-ROM is set and then you can perform installation as prompted.

The procedure for starting the Storage Manager Setup is:

- 1. Logon as administrator.
- 2. Set the CD-ROM of Storage Manager in an application server.
- 3. The Storage Manager Setup starts automatically. Perform the installation as prompted.

The Storage Manager Setup may not start automatically depending on your system configuration, in which case, start the following program contained in the CD-ROM:

\INSTALL\WINDOWS\ISMSETUP.EXE



After the Storage Manager Agent Utility is installed, the system needs to be restarted to start the Storage Manager host agent service.

# **B.2 Collecting/Registering Host Information on Application Server**

## **B.2.1 Collecting Host Information by Using File Output**

To collect host information by using file output, follow the procedure below.

#### 1. Run host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo)

Run the host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo) from the command prompt. For the -export option, specify a file (host information file) to which host information will be reported.

Run the host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo) as a user privileged as Administrator.

```
D:\> iSMcc_hostinfo -export \ServerName
iSMcc_hostinfo: Info: iSM11700: Please wait a minute.
iSMcc_hostinfo: Info: iSM11770: Host Information was exported
successfully. (code=
aaaa-bbbb-bbbb-bbbb)
iSMcc_hostinfo: Info: iSM11100: Command has completed
successfully.
```

#### 2. Confirm the result of running the command

After running the host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo), confirm that the message No. iSM11770 is reported and the host information is successfully collected. "aaaa" in the message example above is replaced with a process number and "bbbb" with an internal code for maintenance in the actual message.

#### 3. Transferring the host information file

Transfer the host information file reported by using the host information collection command (iSMcc hostinfo) to a client by using file transfer, USB memory, or other methods.

To register host information files transferred to clients, see Section B.2.2: "Registering Host Information by Using File Output".

## **B.2.2 Registering Host Information by Using File Output**

To register host information by using file output, follow the procedure below.

1. Report a host information file.

See Section B.2.1: "Collecting Host Information by Using File Output" to report a host information file.

2. Transfer the host information file to a client.

Use file transfer, USB memory or other methods to transfer the host information file to a client.

3. Register the host information by using Storage Manager.

On the left pane on the Storage Manager window, click **Configuration**, **Host** and **Host Information Collection** to open the Host Information Registration window.

	<u></u>
Monitor	8
Screen	
Screen Operation	0
Fault Information	
Power Consumption	
Configuration	8
Initialization	0
User Setting	
Pool	0
Hot Spare	0
Logical Disk	0
Host	0
Assignment of Logical Disk	
Unassignment of Logical Disk	
Host Operation	8
Host Information Collection	
Configuration Lock/Unlock	
LD Set Management	
Disk Array	0

Figure B-1: Getting Started - Host Information Collection

4. Select host information setting method.
| Information Setting Method > Host Informati                                                                                          | on Registration >                        | <ul> <li>Completion</li> </ul> |          |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------|--|
| ct host information setting method.                                                                                                  |                                          |                                |          |  |
| Collect host information automatically (Wir                                                                                          | ndows, Linux or Hy                       | per-V).                        |          |  |
| O Update with host information file. (Windows                                                                                        | , Linux or Hyper-                        | v)                             |          |  |
| Create host information manually. (Windows,                                                                                          | Linux, VMware or                         | Hyper-V)                       |          |  |
| Explanation                                                                                                                          |                                          |                                |          |  |
| Storage Manager Agent Utility" or "ControlCom<br>eforehand to collect automatically or update                                        | mand" has to be in<br>with host informat | nstalled in a tion file.       | host     |  |
| ither of the following conditions must be sat<br>nformation automatically.                                                           | isfied to collect                        | the host                       |          |  |
| The platform of all the new hosts is either consists of new disk arrays and new hosts.                                               | Windows or Linux,                        | and the syste                  | <b>a</b> |  |
| The Platform of existing and new hosts is ei<br>hosts are added to an existing system where                                          | ther Windows or Li<br>there is only one  | inux, and new<br>disk array.   |          |  |
| For Linux hosts, you need to click Next to e<br>then make the Linux hosts recognize the host<br>command to collect host information. | nable host recogni<br>recognize volume:  | ize volumes,<br>s, and run the |          |  |
| hen update with host information file,<br>lease prepare the host information file made                                               | on the host on the                       | e client machi                 | ne.      |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |
|                                                                                                                                      |                                          |                                |          |  |

Figure B-2: Host Information Collection - Setting Method

Select the **Update with host information file. (Windows, Linux or Hyper-V)** option and click **Next**.

5. Specify the host information file.

Host Information	Collection			
Host Information S	etting Method > Host In	formation Registration > Com	pletion	
Collect host informa	tion.			
Click Show colle It may take time Nait a few minut	ected information to disp a few minutes to collected before you click Show	lay the host information on t t the information on Windows ( collected information.	he list below. or Hyper-V.	
You need to run Run the command	the command "iSMcc_hosti and then click Show coll	nfo -store" to collect the ho ected information.	st information on Linux.	
Show collects	ed information	1	1	
Host name	Platform Windows (WW)	IP address(IPv4)	IP address(IPv6)	
		< Back Me	xt > Cancel	Help

Figure B-3: Host Information Collection - Registration

- a. Click **Show collected information** to specify the file in which host information is recorded and click **Add**.
- b. Confirm that all the host information is retrieved and click **Next**. This displays the Host information collection completion window.

6. Host information setting completion window

A Host Information Collection
Host Information Setting Method > Host Information Registration > Completion
Host information collection succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Assign logical disks to the host
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind Collection (FC Only)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

#### Figure B-4: Host Information Collection - Completion

The result of setting host information is displayed. Click Finish to close the page.

## **B.3 Checking Connection from Application Server**

This section describes how to check connection under a Windows environment and check the Multipath settings and status.

#### **B.3.1 Check connection under a Windows environment**

After confirming that the application server and disk array unit are connected through an FC cable, restart the server and perform the following checks.

- a. To start, select Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Device Manager.
- b. Click **Disk drives** and check the number of logical disks.



If nothing is displayed, the OS was unable to recognize logical disks in the disk array assigned to a server. Check the connection between the server and disk array unit, the Access Control settings, host bus adapter driver settings, etc.

Display example: When four logical disks are assigned to a server.



Figure B-5: Computer Management - Device Manager

c. Open Disk Management and check the number of logical disks assigned to a server.

Computer Management (Local)	Volume Layout	Type File System Status	Capacity	Actions	
System Tools	(C:) Simple	Basic NTFS Healthy (System, Boot, Page File, Active, Crash Dump, Primary Partition)	149.01 GE	Disk Mana	
Event Viewer	1			More	
Shared Folders      Morel Users and Groups	rs D				
<ul> <li>Reliability and Performance</li> </ul>	Disk 0				
Device Manager	Basic 149 01 CB				
Disk Management	Online	Healthy (System, Boot, Page File, Active, Crash Dump, Primary Partition)			
Services and Applications	Disk 1				
	Unknown				
	Offline	8.00 GB Unallocated			
	Dick 2				
	Unknown				
	Offline	8.00 GB Unallocated			
Check the	Colorada D				
number of	Unknown				
disks indicated	8.00 GB Offline	8.00 GB Unallocated			
this icons.					
	Unknown				
	8.00 GB Offline	8.00 GB			
<b>N</b>					

Figure B-6: Computer Management - Disk Management

## **B.3.2 Check the Multipath Settings and Status**

When Multipath is not used, it is not necessary to perform this step.

After checking the FC cable connection between the application server and disk array unit, restart the server and run the following command from the command prompt.



For details, refer to the StoreWay Multipath User's Guide (Windows Version).

#### **Check Multipath status**

Run the following command from the command prompt.

spsadmin /lun

Check the message shown after the command is executed, and then check the number of logical disks assigned to the server, the number of access paths per logical disk, and each path status.

**Display example:** When two logical disks are assigned to a server, with two access paths per logical disk.

```
C:\>spsadmin /lun
+++ LogicalUnit #0 +++
SerialNumber="0000000995000001", LDNumber=0x00000
LoadBalance=Least Size
0: ScsiAddress=2:0:0:0, Priority=1, Status=Active
1: ScsiAddress=3:0:0:0, Priority=2, Status=Standby
+++ LogicalUnit #1 +++
SerialNumber="000000995000001", LDNumber=0x00001
LoadBalance=Least Size
0: ScsiAddress=2:0:0:1, Priority=1, Status=Active
1: ScsiAddress=3:0:0:1, Priority=2, Status=Standby
```



If nothing is displayed, none of the access paths recognized the logical disks of the disk array unit assigned to the application server. Check the connection between the application server and the disk array unit, the Access Control settings, host bus adapter driver settings, and other settings.

# Appendix C How to Set/Check Application Server (Windows) (iSCSI)

## C.1 Initializing Application Server

Perform the following steps to initialize the application server in Windows environments.



## C.1.1 Preparation

Perform the following steps to prepare for installation of application server in Windows environment:

1. Provide IP addresses for an application server

Prepare IP addresses to be assigned to the application server as many as the NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR) ports. In addition, prepare the subnet mask and gateway addresses by asking the network administrator.

If two or more IP addresses are used by Multipath, the same network segment cannot be specified. Prepare IP addresses of other segments.

**Example 1:** Connectable configuration

HP0:192.168.0.10 HP1:192.168.1.10 **Example 2:** Unconnectable configuration HP0:192.168.0.10 HP1:192.168.0.11

2. Attach NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR)

Attach the NIC to the application server as described in the manuals provided with the NIC and application server.



If the NIC has already been attached to the application server, this step is not necessary.

3. Install the NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR) driver

Install and set up the driver according to the setup procedure in the manual provided with the NIC equipped in the server, or by referencing information provided on the Web, etc.



If the driver has already been installed and set up for the NIC equipped in the application server, this step is not necessary.

4. Specify the network settings

Select Start > Control Panel > Network Connection, and then open Local Area Connection **Properties** to specify the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

5. Connect to the disk array unit

Use a 10-Gbps or 1-Gbps cable to connect the application server to the host port (HP connector) of the disk array unit.

 Unit equipped with NF53x1-xF21xx (unit with 10Gbps iSCSI 2port controllers) 10-Gbps cable

Connector shape: LC connector



Unit equipped with NF53x1-xF11xx (unit with 1Gbps iSCSI 2port controllers)
 1-Gbps cable

Connector shape: RJ-45 connector



For a sample connection configuration, see *Appendix K: "iSCSI Connection Configuration-Examples"*.

The following shows the positions of the host ports.







Figure C-2: Unit with NF53x1-xFxx (1Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)

The following shows an example of a 10-Gbps iSCSI connection (redundant path configuration in combination with Multipath ).

To implement the following recommended example, two NICs must be installed in the application server and two 10-Gbps cables are needed to connect the disk array unit and NICs.

Use a 10-Gbps cable to connect the NIC to the host port (HP connector) of the disk array unit. (The 10-Gbps cable has the same connector shape on both ends.)



Figure C-3: Configuration Example

### C.1.2 Installing iSCSI Software Initiator

Perform the following steps to install iSCSI Software Initiator in Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2003 environments:

#### Windows Server 2008

Windows Server 2008 have the iSCSI Software Initiator already installed, so there are no installation steps. Select **Start > Administrative Tools**, and then start iSCSI Initiator.

The following dialog boxes are displayed only during initial startup. After the service is started, if there are no problems with the firewall settings, click the **Yes** button in each screen.



Figure C-4: Microsoft iSCSI (1) Dialog Box



Figure C-5: Microsoft iSCSI (2) Screen

#### Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 R2

Perform the following steps to install the initiator in Windows Server 2003 or Windows Server 2003 R2 environment:

- 1. Download the Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator from the Microsoft website (http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/).
- The following screen is displayed when installation of the Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator begins. Click the Next button.



#### Figure C-6: Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (1)

- 3. After changing the settings as follows, click the **Next** button.
  - Select the **Initiator Service** option.
  - Select the **Software Initiator** option.

• Deselect the **Microsoft MPIO Multipathing Support for iSCSI** option.

When Multipath is being used, the MPIO function cannot be used.

Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Installation		
Microsoft iSCSI Initiator will be installed		
Installation Options		
Virtual Port Driver		
🔽 Initiator Service		
Software Initiator		
Microsoft MPIO Multipathing Su	pport for iSCSI	
	N management	

Figure C-7: Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (2)

4. If you agree to the terms of the license agreement, select **I Agree**, and then click the **Next** button.

tware Updat	e Installation Wizard			
License Agi	eement			
	Please read the following liv you must accept the agree	cense agreement. To ment.	continue with setup	
15	END-USER LICENSE AGI SOFTWARE	REEMENT FOR MICF	ROSOFT	
	Microsoft iSCSI Initiator 2.0	)		
	IMPORTANT - PLEASE R AGREEMENT ("EULA") C COPYING OR OTHERWIS	EAD THIS END-USE AREFULLY, BY INST SE USING THE SOFT	R LICENSE TALLING, TWARE THAT	
	CIDo Not Agree		<u>Print</u>	J
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Figure C-8: Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (3)

5. The following dialog box appears next. No more user input is needed until installation is completed.

Updating Y	'our System			
ß	Please wait while setu your current files and	up inspects your currer updates your files.	it configuration, arch	ives
	Backing up files			
0.				
E	acking up registry			12
<i></i>				
		5	f ware f	e Cartonia

Figure C-9: Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (4)

6. Click the **Finish** button to restart the server.



Figure C-10: Software Update Installation Wizard Screen (5)

7. After the server is restarted, the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator icon appears on the desktop.



#### Figure C-11: Application Server Desktop Screen

### C.1.3 Installing StoreWay Multipath

See Section G.1: For Windows Application Server for installation procedure.

This operation is not necessary if you do not install StoreWay Multipath.



## C.1.4 Setting up iSCSI Software Initiator

Settings for the Windows Server 2008 environment are described below.

1. Select the **General** tab in the iSCSI Initiator Properties screen to check the iqn (iSCSI Qualified Name) shown as the Initiator name.

I initiator Properties		
Favorite Targets	Volumes and Devices	RADIUS
General	Discovery	Targets
SCSI devices are disk, ta another computer on you	apes, CDs, and other storage ur network that you can conn	e devices on vect to.
Your computer is called a the ISCSI device, which is	n initiator because it initiates s called a target.	the connection to
Initiator Name	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:	insl.ad.nec.co.jp
To rename the initiator, o	dick Change.	Ghange
fo use mutual CHAP auti argets, set up a CHAP s	nentication for verifying ecret.	Secret
To set up IPsec tunnel m cick Set up.	ode addresses,	Setup
/hat is ISCSI ?		

#### Figure C-12: iSCSI Initiator Properties (General Tab) Screen

- Click the **Change** button to change the iqn.
- Click the **Secret** button when using the mutual CHAP authentication.
- Click the Setup button when using the IPSec tunnel mode function. This is not supported.



CHAP authentication is also described in Appendix N: "CHAP Authentication".

2. If mutual CHAP authentication will be used, click the **Secret** button. If mutual CHAP authentication will not be used, skip step (3) and move to step (4) below.

SI Initiator Properties			2
Favorite Targets	Volumes and Devices	RADIUS	1
General	Discovery	Targets	
iSCSI devices are disk, ta another computer on you	apes, CDs, and other storag ur network that you can con	e devices on nect to.	
Your computer is called a the iSCSI device, which is	in initiator because it initiate: s called a target.	s the connection to	
Initiator Name	iqn. 1991-05. com. microsoft	::nsl.ad.nec.co.jp	
To rename the initiator, o	dick Change.	Change	
To use mutual CHAP autitargets, set up a CHAP s	nentication for verifying 🧲	Secret	
To set up IPsec tunnel m click Set up.	ode addresses,	Sgt up	
What is iSCSI ?			
	OK Can	cel Apply	

Figure C-13: iSCSI Initiator Properties (General Tab) Screen

3. Under **CHAP Secret**, enter the password assigned to Initiator for use in mutual CHAP authentication, and then click the **OK** button.



Figure C-14: CHAP Secret Input Window



- 4. Perform the iSCSI Initiator Properties Discovery tab settings using any of the following options:
  - Settings when not using iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server
  - Settings when using the iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server

#### Settings when not using iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server

Perform the following settings:

a.	Under the Discovery tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties, click the Add Portal button under
	Target Portal.

Favorite Targ General	ets	Volumes and Devic Discovery	es RADIUS Targets
arget portals			
Address	Port	Adapter	IP address
_			
Add Porta		Remove	R <u>e</u> fresh
	and the second se		
INS servers			
NS servers Name	_		
NS servers			
NS servers ·			
NS servers Name		Remove	Refrech
NS servers · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Remove	Refresh
NS servers · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Remove	Refresh

Figure C-15: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen

b. Enter the IP address of the disk array host port (iSCSI port) under **IP address or DNS name**. Make sure the entry is correct, and then click the **OK** button.

Turne the ID address or DNC or	me and part oumber o	f the partal you was
to add. To select settings for t	he discovery session t	to the portal, click
Advanced.		
P address or SNS name:	Port:	
10.0.0.2	3260	<u>A</u> dvanced
		and the second se

Figure C-16: Add Target Portal Screen



c. The following pop-up window may appear, but it does not affect operations. Click the **OK** button.



Figure C-17: Authentication Error Screen

d. To make the host port (iSCSI port) on the disk array of a redundant configuration, perform steps (a) to (c) above for each additional host port.
When settings are completed, a screen such as the following is displayed. Click the **OK** button. **Example:** When two Target Portal IP addresses have been registered.

avorite Targ	ets	Volumes and Devices	RADIUS
General		Discovery	Targets
arget portals	-		
Address	Port	Adapter	IP address
10.0.0.2	3260	Default	Default
10.0.1.2	3260	Default	Default
Add Porta		Remove	R <u>e</u> fresh
NS servers			
NS servers Name A <u>d</u> d		Remove	Refresh

Figure C-18: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen

#### Settings when using iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server

<b>A</b> CAUTION	<ul> <li>Microsoft iSNS Server must be installed in a Windows server on the same network as the application server.</li> </ul>
	For detailed description of iSNS server, refer to manuals and other documents provided separately from Microsoft Corporation.

#### Perform the following settings:

a. Under the Discovery tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties, click the Add button.

	1		1
Favorite Target	s	Volumes and Devices	RADIUS
General		Discovery	Targets
arget portals			
Address	Port	Adapter	IP address
Add Portal	. 1	Remove	Refresh
-		_	-
SNS servers			
SNS servers			
SNS servers			
5NS servers			
5NS servers			
5NS servers -		-	
Name		Remove	Refresh
Name		Remove	Refresh
Name		Remove	Refresh

Figure C-19: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen

b. Enter the IP address of the iSNS server under **IP address or DNS name of server**. Make sure the entry is correct, and then click the **OK** button.

Add iSNS Server	×
IF gooress or DNS name of s	erver:
10.0.0.5	
	OK Cancel

Figure C-20: iSNS Server Add Screen

c. Repeat steps (a) and (b) above for each iSNS server IP address to be registered. When settings are completed, a screen such as the following is displayed. Click the OK button.
 Example: When two iSNS server IP addresses are registered.

	i		1
Favorite Targets		Volumes and Devices	RADIUS
General		Discovery	largets
arget portals –			
Address	Port	Adapter	IP address
Add Portal	1	Remove	Refresh
-			_
SNS servers			
NS servers			
NS servers			
Name           10.0.0.5           10.0.1.5			
Name 10.0.0.5 10.0.1.5			
Name           10.0.0.5           10.0.1.5			
NS servers Name 10.0.0.5 10.0.1.5 Add	1	Remove	Refresh
Name           10.0.0.5           10.0.1.5		Remove	Refresh
Name           10.0.0.5           10.0.1.5		Remove	Refresh
SNS servers		Remove	Refresh

Figure C-21: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Discovery Tab) Screen

d. This gets Initiator information from the application server registered to the iSNS server. Refer to Appendix M: "Retrieve Initiator Information on Application Servers Registered with iSNS Server".



When using the iSNS server, the Initiator name of the application server must be directly entered under the Initiator settings in the iSCSI Setup Tool.

e. Click the **OK** button.

SI Initiator Properti	25		
Favorite Targets	Volumes and	Devices	RADIUS
General	Discovery	1	Targets
ISCSI devices are disk, another computer on y	tapes, CDs, and ot your network that yo	her storage o ou can conne	fevices on ct to.
Your computer is called the iSCSI device, which	an initiator because h is called a target.	e it initiates t	he connection to
Initiator Name	ign. 1991-05.con	n.microsoft:n	sl.ad.nec.co.jp
To rename the initiator	, dick Change.		<u>C</u> hange
To use mutual CHAP au targets, set up a CHAP	uthentication for ver secret.	ifying	Secret
To set up IPsec tunnel dick Set up.	mode addresses,		Set up
What is ISCSI ?			
	$\frown$		
	ОК	Cance	l <u>A</u> pply

Figure C-22: iSCSI Initiator Properties (General Tab) Screen

## C.2 iSCSI Setup Tool

Run the iSCSI Setup Tool on application servers to configure the iSCSI settings required for the application server. Before starting this section, you need to install Storage Manager Agent Utility. For details on how to install, see Section B.1: Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility.

1. Starting iSCSI Setup Tool

Click Start > Storage Manager Agent Utility > iSCSI Setup Tool to start iSCSI Setup Tool.

2. Selecting the target disk array unit

Select the serial number of the target disk array unit from the **Serial number(S)** box.

🚟 iSCSI Setup Tool	
Select disk array	i Storage
Serial number( <u>S</u> ):	
	OK( <u>O</u> ) Cancel( <u>C</u> )

After selecting or entering the serial number, click **OK**.

3. When collecting the disk array unit information is successfully completed, the serial number, controllers, IP addresses of the disk array unit and their connection statuses are displayed.

g on to the target			•Storag
arget IP address( <u>T</u> ):			
Serial number	Controller	IP address	Status
000000996000020	0	192.168.1.119	Disconnection
000000996000020	0	192.168.1.120	Disconnection
000000996000020	1	192.168.11.119	Disconnection
000000996000020	1	192.168.11.120	Disconnection
CHAP authentication Please enter 'Target se authentication.	n(U) ecret' and 'Target secre	t again' when you use	CHAP
CHAP authentication Please enter 'Target se authentication. Target secret( <u>S</u> ): Target secret again( <u>A</u> ):	n(U) ecret' and 'Target secre	et again' when you use	€ CHAP
CHAP authentication Please enter 'Target se authentication. Target secret( <u>S</u> ): Target secret again( <u>A</u> ): Mutual CHAP auther Please enter password when you use Mutual C	n(U) ecret' and 'Target secre ntication( <u>B</u> ) I given to initiator to 'CH HAP authentication.	et again' when you use	e CHAP
CHAP authentication Please enter 'Target se authentication. Target secret( <u>S</u> ): Target secret again( <u>A</u> ): Mutual CHAP authen Please enter password when you use Mutual C CHAP secret( <u>P</u> ):	n(U) ecret' and 'Target secre ntication( <u>B)</u> I given to initiator to 'CH HAP authentication.	et again' when you use	CHAP
CHAP authentication Please enter 'Target se authentication. Target secret( <u>S</u> ): Target secret again( <u>A</u> ): Mutual CHAP auther Please enter password when you use Mutual C CHAP secret( <u>P</u> ): CHAP secret again( <u>R</u> ):	n(U) ecret' and 'Target secre ntication( <u>B</u> ) I given to initiator to 'CH HAP authentication.	et again' when you use	e CHAP
CHAP authentication Please enter 'Target se authentication. Target secret( <u>S</u> ): Target secret again( <u>A</u> ): Mutual CHAP auther Please enter password when you use Mutual C CHAP secret( <u>P</u> ): CHAP secret again( <u>R</u> ):	ntication( <u>B</u> ) I given to initiator to 'CH HAP authentication.	et again' when you use IAP secret' and 'CHAP Logon( <u>O</u> )	e CHAP e secret again' Cancel( <u>C</u> )

#### Figure C-23: iSCSI Setup Tool - Log on to the Target

Select a target IP addresses from the list and configure required settings. You can select multiple target IP addresses. When you want to select multiple target IP addresses, select the **Multi Path** check box.

After the required information is entered, click **Logon**.

4. When logging on to the target disk array is successfully complete, the message "Logon Succeeded." appears. Clicking OK brings you back to the logon page of the target, so click Close to end iSCSI Setup Tool.



## C.3 Checking Connection from Application Server

Perform the following steps to connect the application server and disk array in Windows environments.



## C.3.1 Logon Steps in Windows Environments

Perform the following steps to logon to the target in the windows environment:

1. Click the **Refresh** under the **Targets** tab in **iSCSI Initiator Properties**. Then, the Initiator name (iqn) of the disk array unit will be shown under **Targets**. Select an iqn and click the **Log on** button.

General     Discovery     Targets       To access storage devices for a target, select the target and then click Log on.     To see information about sessions, connections, and devices for a target, click Details.       Iargets:     Name       Status       ign.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-00	Favorite Targets	Volumes and Devices	RADIUS
To access storage devices for a target, select the target and then click Log on. To see information about sessions, connections, and devices for a target, click Details. <u>Targets:</u> <u>Name</u> <u>Status</u> ign.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-00 Inactive	General	Discovery	Targets
Targets: Name Status Ign.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-00 Inactive	To access storage devices Log on. To see information about s click Details.	for a target, select the target	t and then click vices for a target,
ign.2001-05.jp.hecistorage01:ist-3-10-sh-00 Inacove	<u>T</u> argets:		
	Name	Stati	9
	ign.2001-03.jp.nec:stora	ge01:ist-3-10-sn-00 Inact	is tive

#### Figure C-24: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Targets Tab) Screen

- 2. Change the following settings. When finished, click the **Advanced** button.
  - Select the Automatically restore this connection when the system boots option.
  - Do not select the **Enable muti-path** option.



#### Figure C-25: Log On to Target Screen

3. Change the following settings. When finished, click the **OK** button.

#### **Connection settings**

- Select the **Microsoft iSCSI Initiator** option from the **Local Adapter** drop-down menu.
- Select the IP address of the local server from the **Source IP** drop-down menu.
- Select the IP address of the disk array host port (iSCSI port) from the Target Portal drop-down menu.

#### **CHAP** Authentication Settings

- Select the CHAP logon information option.
- Enter password to be assigned to target in the **Target Secret** box.
- Select **Execute mutual CHAP** option when using mutual CHAP authentication.

tocal adapter:	Microsoft ISCSI Initiator
Source IP:	10.0.0.16
Target portal:	10.0.0.2 / 3260
CRC / Checksum	
Data digest	Header digest
GHAP logon in CHAP helps ensu nitiator. To use i for this initiator.	formation a data security by providing authentication between a target and an t, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target
GHAP logon i CHAP helps ensu nitiator. To use i for this initiator.	formation the data security by providing authentication between a target and an t, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target
GHAP logon in CHAP helps ensuinitiator. To use i for this initiator. User name: Target gecret:	normation e data security by providing authentication between a target and an it, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target inn. 1991-05.com microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whqldc11.lo
CHAP logon in CHAP helps ensu- initator. To use in for this initiator. User name: Target gecret:	formation te data security by providing authentication between a target and an t, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target Inn. 1991-05.com microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whqldc11.lo
CHAP logon is CHAP helps ensu initator. To use if for this initiator. User name: Target gecret:  Iraget gecret:  Ense PAOLOC  Enform mutu	Inc. 1991-05 com microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whqidc11.lo
QHAP logon is     CHAP helps ensu     for this initiator.     Jeer name:     Target gecret:     Traget gecret:     Verform mutu     To use mutual Co     RADIUS. The sa	Inc. 1991-05 com microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whqidc11.lo

#### Figure C-26: Advanced Setting (General Tab) Screen



For description of CHAP authentication, refer to Appendix N: "CHAP Authentication".



The Target Secret that is set here is a password that a target uses to authenticate an Initiator. This password is also required for settings on the disk array side (see Section: 13.2.21 iSMcfg setIdsetchap in the Storage Manager Command Reference), so be sure to write it down so it is not forgotten.

4. Click the **OK** button.



Figure C-27: Log On to Target Screen



In the Log On to Target screen, the target for which **Automatically** restore connection when computer boots has been specified is registered as a **Persistent Target** in **iSCSI Initiator Properties**.

To change or delete the logon setting for this target, select the iqn of the target to be deleted as a **Persistent Target**, and after it is deleted go to the **Targets** tab under **iSCSI Initiator Properties** to set or change the logon settings for that target.

General	Discovery	Targets
Favorite Targets	Volumes and Devices	RADIUS
Description		
You can reconnect to a do this, on the Targets "Automatically restore t	target each time you start yo tab, click Log on and select th this connection when the comp	our computer. To ne check box puter starts."
worite targets:		
Name		
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	age01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009.	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	age01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009.	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	age01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009.	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	age01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	rage01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	rage01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	rage01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	age01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009	35080015.wn-x.
qn.2001-03.jp.nec:stor	rage01:ist-3-10-sn-00000009.	35080015.wn-x.
	Concern and the second second	
<u>D</u> etails	Remove	Refresh

Perform the following steps:

- 1. Select iqn of target.
- 2. Delete the selected iqn.
- 3. Check that the iqn status of the target disk array unit is shown as **Connected** (transition from inactive).
  - When adding registration of host port (iSCSI port) for the disk array (redundant configuration). Click the Log On button.
  - When not adding registration of host port (iSCSI port) for the disk array (non-redundant configuration)

Click the **OK** button. This completes the operations.



Figure C-28: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Targets Tab) Screen

#### When adding host port registration

- 4. Change the following setting. When finished, click the Advanced button.
  - Select the Automatically restore this connection when the system boots option.
  - Select the **Enable multi-path** option.



Under the settings for the newly registered disk array host port, select the **Enable multi-path** option.



#### Figure C-29: Log On to Target Screen

#### When registering additional host port

5. Change the following settings. When finished, click the **OK** button.

#### **Connection settings**

- Select the **Microsoft iSCSI Initiator** option from the **Local Adapter** drop-down menu.
- Select the IP address of the local server from the **Source IP** drop-down menu.
- Select the IP address of the disk array host port (iSCSI port) from the Target Portal drop-down menu.

#### **CHAP** authentication settings

- Select the CHAP logon information option.
- Enter password to be assigned to target in the **Target Secret** box.
- Select **Execute mutual CHAP** option when using mutual CHAP authentication.
| local adapter:                                                                                                                        | Microsoft ISCSI Initiator                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Source IP:                                                                                                                            | 10.0.0.16                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| [arget portal:                                                                                                                        | 10.0.0.2 / 3260                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| CRC / Checksum                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Data digest                                                                                                                           | Eeader digest                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                       | Constanting of the second s                                                                                                                                                                                |
| GHAP logon                                                                                                                            | information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| QHAP logon<br>CHAP helps ensi-<br>nitator. To use<br>for this initiator.                                                              | information<br>re data security by providing authentication between a target and an<br>it, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target                                                                                                                               |
| CHAP logon<br>CHAP helps ensinitator. To use<br>for this initiator.                                                                   | information<br>are data security by providing authentication between a target and an<br>it, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target<br>ign. 1991-05.com.microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whgldc11.lo                                                                      |
| CHAP logon<br>CHAP helps ensinitiator. To use<br>for this initiator.<br>Jser name:<br>Target georet:                                  | information<br>re.data security by providing authentication between a target and an<br>it, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target<br>ign.1991-05.com.microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whgldc11.lo                                                                        |
| CHAP logon<br>CHAP helps ensi-<br>nibator. To use<br>for this inibator.<br>Jser name:<br>Target georet:                               | information<br>are data security by providing authentication between a target and an<br>it, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target<br>ign. 1991-05.com.microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whgldc11.lo<br>incongrate user authentication credentials                        |
| CHAP logon<br>CHAP helps ensi-<br>nibator. To use<br>for this inibator.<br>User name:<br>Target georet:<br>Lieg PADULE<br>Perform mut | information<br>are data security by providing authentication between a target and an<br>it, specify the same target CHAP secret that was configured on the target<br>ign. 1991-05.com.microsoft:w2k8-x86-16en.whgldc11.lo<br>to generate user authentication credentials<br>ual authenticition |





For description of CHAP authentication, refer to Appendix N: "CHAP Authentication".



The Target Secret that is set here is a password that a target uses to authenticate an Initiator. This password is also required for settings on the disk array side (see Section: 13.2.21 iSMcfg setIdsetchap in the Storage Manager Command Reference), so be sure to write it down so it is not forgotten.

#### Additional host port registration

6. Click the OK button.

og On to Target	×
Target name:	
3.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-0000000935080015.wn-x86.target0003	
Automatically restore this connection when the computer starts	
Enable multi-path	
Only select this option if iSCSI multi-path software is already installed on your computer.	
Advanced OK Cancel	

#### Figure C-31: Log On to Target Screen

 To register additional disk array host ports, click the Log On button, and then perform steps (6) to (8) for each port to be registered.

After the host port settings have been registered, click the **OK** button.

Favorite Targets	Volumes and Device	RADIUS
General	Discovery	Targets
Fo access storage devic .og on.	es for a target, select the	target and then click
To see information abou	ut sessions, connections, ar	nd devices for a target,
and Details.		
[argets:		
Name		Status
ign.2001-03.jp.nec:st	orage01:ist-3-10-sn-00	Connected
Details	Log on	R <u>e</u> fresh
Details	Log on	R <u>e</u> fresh

Figure C-32: iSCSI Initiator Properties (Target Tab) Screen

## C.3.2 Confirmation Steps in Windows Environments

Perform the following step to confirm that the OS recognizes logical disk in the Windows environment:

- 1. Select Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Disk Manager to start.
- 2. Click **Disk drives** and check the number of logical disks.



If nothing is shown, the OS was unable to recognize logical disks in the disk array assigned to a server. Check the connection between the server and disk array unit, the Access Control settings, NIC driver settings, etc.

**Display example:** When four logical disks are assigned to a server.





3. Open **Disk Management** and check the number of logical disks (number of logical disks assigned to a server).



Figure C-34: Disk Management

# C.3.3 Check the Multipath Settings and Status

When Multipath will not be used, this step is not necessary.

After checking the HOST cable connection between the application server and disk array unit, restart the server and run the following command from the command prompt.

For details, refer to the Multipath User's Guide (Windows Version).

To check Multipath status, run the following command from the command prompt:

spsadmin /lun

Check the message shown after the command is executed then check the number of logical disks assigned to the server, the number of access paths per logical disk, and each path status.

**Display example:** When two logical disks are assigned to a server, with two access paths per logical disk

Following is an example of spsadmin/lun output:

```
C:\>spsadmin /lun
+++ LogicalUnit #0 +++
SerialNumber="0000000995000001", LDNumber=0x00000
LoadBalance=Least Size
0: ScsiAddress=2:0:0:0, Priority=1, Status=Active
1: ScsiAddress=3:0:0:0, Priority=2, Status=Standby
+++ LogicalUnit #1 +++
SerialNumber="000000995000001", LDNumber=0x00001
LoadBalance=Least Size
0: ScsiAddress=2:0:0:1, Priority=1, Status=Active
1: ScsiAddress=3:0:0:1, Priority=2, Status=Standby
```



If nothing is displayed, none of the access paths recognized the logical disks of the disk array unit assigned to the application server. Check the connection between the application server and the disk array unit, the Access Control settings, NIC driver settings, etc.

# Appendix D How to Set/Check Application Server (Linux) (FC)

This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking application server in the Linux environment, when the disk array is configured for the FC connection.

# D.1 Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility

This section describes how to install the Storage Manager Agent Utility.

## **D.1.1 Before Installation**

Note the followings before installing the Storage Manager Agent Utility. The following functions become available by installing the Storage Manager Agent Utility.

- iSM volume list command
- Host agent (Host agent service)
- iSCSI Setup Tool
- Storage Manager Host Register Agent

Table D-1 shows the supported operating environment.

Operating systems	Red Hat Enterprise Linux Version 5 (*1)		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5 to 5.7 (IA32/EM64T)		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5 to 5.7 Advanced Platform (IA32/EM64T)		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux Version 6		
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.1 (IA32/EMT64)		
	SUSE Linux Enterprise Server10		
	SUSE Linux Enterprise 10 SP3 (IA32/EM64T) (*2)		
	(*1) The iSCSI Setup Tool (sharing function) supports Red Had Enterprise Linux 5.5 (IA32, EM64T).		
	(*2) Only for disk arrays connected via FC		
Memory	OS required memory + 5 MB or more (IA32 server and EM64T server)		
Disk capacity	12 MB or more		

#### Table D-1: Operating Environment (Linux)

* Above are the supported environments for this version at the point of the initial shipment of this product.

# **D.1.2 Installation**

Install the Storage Manager Agent Utility by following the procedure below:

- 1. Log in as a root user.
- 2. Check that none of the following software has been installed:
  - ■iSMrpl (ReplicationControl)
  - ■iSMrcd (ReplicationControl/DisasterRecovery)
  - ■iSMsc (SnapControl)
  - ■iSMvol (iSM volume list command)
  - ■iSMagent (Storage Manager Agent Utility)

Run the following commands and check the results:

- rpm -q iSMrpl
- rpm -q iSMrcd
- rpm -q iSMsc
- rpm -q iSMvol
- rpm -q iSMagent

If any of them has been installed, uninstall all of them.

3. Set the CD-ROM in the application server.



On the server where CD-ROMs are not available, transfer the file of iSMvol.rpm from other server to install it.

- 4. Mount the CD-ROM by performing one of the following:
  - Create a mount directory (Example: /cdrom)

Use the mount command for mounting.

mount -r /dev/cdrom /cdrom

5. Use the rpm command to start installation.

rpm -ivh /cdrom/VOLLIST/LINUX/iSMVOL/iSMvol.rpm

6. The installation is complete when the following message is shown:

Installation completed.

7. Unmount the CD-ROM. Use the umount command for unmounting.

umount/cdrom

# **D.2 Collecting/Registering Host Information on Application Server**

# D.2.1 Collecting Host Information by Using File Output

To collect host information by using file output, follow the procedure below.

1. Run host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo)

Run the host information collection command ( $iSMcc_hostinfo$ ) from the command line. For the -export option, specify a file (host information file) to which host information will be reported.

Run the host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo) as a root user.

```
# iSMcc_hostinfo -export /tmp/ServerName
iSMcc_hostinfo: Info: iSM11700: Please wait a minute.
iSMcc_hostinfo: Info: iSM11770: Host Information was exported
successfully. code=
aaaa-bbbb-bbbb-bbbb)
iSMcc_hostinfo: Info: iSM11100: Command has completed
successfully.
```

### 2. Confirm the result of running the command

After running the host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo), confirm that the message No. iSM11770 is reported and the host information is successfully collected. aaaa in the message example above is replaced with a process number and bbbb with an internal code for maintenance in the actual message.

#### 3. Transfer the host information file

Transfer the host information file reported by using the host information collection command (iSMcc_hostinfo) to a client by using file transfer, USB memory and other methods.

To register host information files transferred to clients, see Section D.2.2: "Registering Host Information by Using File Output".

# D.2.2 Registering Host Information by Using File Output

To register host information by using file output, follow the procedure below.

1. Report a host information file.

See Section D.2.1: "Collecting Host Information by Using File Output" to report a host information file.

2. Transfer the host information file.

Use file transfer, USB memory or other methods to transfer the host information file to a client.

3. Register the host information by using Storage Manager.

On the left pane on the Storage Manager window, click **Configuration**> Host > Host Information **Collection** to open the host information registration window.

	3
Monitor	8
Screen	
Screen Operation	0
Fault Information	
Power Consumption	
Configuration	8
Initialization	0
User Setting	
Pool	0
Hot Spare	0
Logical Disk	0
Host	8
Assignment of Logical Disk	
Unassignment of Logical Disk	
Host Operation	0
Host Information Collection	
Configuration Lock/Unlock	
LD Set Management	
Disk Array	0



4. Select host information setting method.

Host Information Collection			
Host Information Setting Nethod > Host Information Registration > Completion			
Select host information setting method.			
Collect host information automatically (Windows, Linux or Hyper-V).			
Update with host information file. (Windows, Linux or Hyper-V)			
$\bigcirc$ Create host information manually. (Windows, Linux, VMware or Hyper-V)			
Explanation			
"Storage Manager Agent Utility" or "ControlCommand" has to be installed in a host beforehand to collect automatically or update with host information file.			
Either of the following conditions must be satisfied to collect the host information automatically.			
<ul> <li>The platform of all the new hosts is either Windows or Linux, and the system consists of new disk arrays and new hosts.</li> <li>The Platform of existing and new hosts is either Windows or Linux, and new hosts are added to an existing system where there is only one disk array.</li> </ul>			
* For Linux hosts, you need to click Next to enable host recognize volumes, then make the Linux hosts recognize the host recognize volumes, and run the command to collect host information.			
When update with host information file, please prepare the host information file made on the host on the client machine.			
< Back	Next >	Cancel	Help

Figure D-2: Set Host Information - Select How to Set

Select the Update with host information file and click Next.

5. Specify the host information file.

Host Information Collection				
Host Information Setting Method > Host Information Registration > Completion				
Collect host information.				
click Browse to sp If the settings are	OK, click Set to start the host information file, OK, click Set to start the host i Browse.	and click Add. information collection.		
Host name	Platform	IP address(IPv4)	IP address(IPv6)	
host	Windows(WN)	192.168.100.1	In and cook toy	
· · · · · ·				
			Delete	
			c Rank Set Cancel Help	
			Zerv 221 Carres Deh	

#### Figure D-3: Set Host Information - Specifying Host Information File

- a. Click **Browse** to specify a file in which host information is recorded and click **Add**.
- b. Confirm that all the host information is retrieved and click **Next**. This displays the Host information setting completion page.
- 6. Check the Host information Collection Completion page.

🔄 Set Host Information
Host Information Setting Method > Host Information Registration > Completion
Host information collection succeeded.
Click a following link if necessary.
Assign logical disks to the host
Click Finish to exit. Monitoring of the disk array resumes.
Configuration Flow Pool Bind Hot Spare Bind Logical Disk Bind Formation Collection (FC/SAS)
< Back Finish Cancel Help

Figure D-4: Host Information Collection - Completion

The result of setting host information is displayed. Click **Finish** to close the page.

# **D.3 Checking Connection from Application Server**

This section describes how to check connection in Linux environment and check the Multipath settings and status.

### **D.3.1 Confirmation Steps in Linux environment**

After checking the FC cable connection between the application server and disk array unit, restart the application server and run the following command to check the number of logical disks ("No. of logical disks assigned to application server" × "No. of access paths from application server to individual logical disks") and the respective vendor and model names (Bull SAS, DISK ARRAY).



If nothing is shown, the OS was unable to recognize logical disks in the disk array assigned to an application server. Check the connection between the server and disk array unit, the Access Control host bus adapter driver settings, etc.

**Display example:** When two logical disks are assigned to a server, with two access paths per logical disk.





In the environment where Multipath is installed, in some cases, depending on the Linux kernel version, the logical disks that can be controlled by Multipath are displayed after the logical disks recognized by the OS via the host bus adapter (comprised in the above example of host bus adapter #1 and host bus adapter #2).

# Appendix E How to Set/Check Application Server (Linux) (iSCSI)

This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking an application server in the Linux environment, when the disk array is configured for the iSCSI connection.

# E.1 Initializing Application Server

Prepare for installation. For details, refer to Section E.1.1: Preparation. Preparation Install the iSCSI-initiator-utils package. Install Microsoft iSCSI Software For details, refer to Section E.1.2: Installing iSCSI Initiator Software Initiator. If the iSCSI-initiator-utils package has already been installed, this step is not necessary. Install Multipath. Install Multipath For details, refer to Section E.1.3: Installing StoreWay Multipath. When Multipath will not be used, this step is not necessary. This describes how to set up the Open-iSCSI driver Set up Disk Enclosure Initiator and CHAP authentication. For details, refer to Section E.1.4: Setting up iSCSI Software Initiator. Finish

Perform the following steps to initialize the application server in Linux environment.

# E.1.1 Preparation

Perform the following steps to prepare for installation of application server in the Linux environment:

1. Provide IP addresses for an application server

Prepare IP addresses to be assigned to the application server as many as the NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR) ports. In addition, prepare the subnet mask and gateway addresses by asking the network administrator.

If two or more IP addresses are used by Multipath, the same network segment cannot be specified. Prepare IP addresses of other segments.

Example 1: Connectable configuration iHP0:192.168.0.10 iHP1:192.168.1.10 Example 2: Unconnectable configuration iHP0:192.168.0.10 iHP1:192.168.0.11

2. Install NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR)

Install the NIC to the application server as described in the manuals provided with the NIC and application server.



3. Install the NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR) driver

Install and set up the driver according to the setup procedure in the manual provided with the NIC installed in the server, or by referencing information provided on the Web, etc.



If the driver has already been installed and set up for the NIC installed in the application server, this step is not necessary.

4. Specify the network settings

Select Start > Control Panel > Network Connection, and then open Local Area Connection **Properties** to specify the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

5. Connect to the disk array unit

Use a 10-Gbps or 1-Gbps cable to connect the application server to the host port (HP connector) of the disk array unit.

 Unit equipped with NF53x1-xF21xx (unit with 10Gbps iSCSI 2port controllers) 10-Gbps cable

Connector shape: LC connector



Unit equipped with NF53x1-xF11xx (unit with 1Gbps iSCSI 2port controllers)
 1-Gbps cable

Connector shape: RJ-45 connector



For a sample connection configuration, see *Appendix K: "iSCSI Connection Configuration-Examples"*.

The following shows the positions of the host ports.







Figure E-2: Unit with NF53x1-xF11xx (1Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)

The following shows an example of a 10-Gbps iSCSI connection (redundant path configuration in combination with Multipath).

To implement the following recommended example, two NICs must be installed in the application server and two 10-Gbps cables are needed to connect the disk array unit and NICs.

Use a 10-Gbps cable to connect the NIC to the host port (HP connector) of the disk array unit. (The 10-Gbps cable has the same connector shape on both ends.)



Figure E-3: Configuration Example

# E.1.2 Installing iSCSI Software Initiator

Installation of iscsi-initiator-utils package is necessary.

Install the package by following the procedures on the manual of the operating system or the information provided on the website.



This procedure is unnecessary if the installation of iscsi-initiator-utils package is already finished.

Open-iscsi is installed as standard DBM database. Discovery (discovery.db) and Node (node.d) tables are included. The iSCSI database files are stored in /etc/iscsi/.

Install iscsi-initiator-utils package.

```
# yum install iscsi-initiator-utils
```

# E.1.3 Installing StoreWay Multipath

See Section G.2: For Linux Application Server for installation procedure.

This operation is not necessary if you do not install StoreWay Multipath.

# E.1.4 Setting up iSCSI Software Initiator

Perform the following steps to install iSCSI Software Initiator in the Linux environment:

#### Set up Open-iSCSI Driver

1. Run the following command from the console to stop the iSCSI service.

```
# service iscsid stop
```



If the iSCSI service has already been stopped, this step is not necessary.

- 2. Use vi or another editor to open the /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file on the server.
- 3. After changing the settings in the variables shown in *Table E-1: Open-iSCSI Driver Settings* to the following values, save and close the file.

```
node.startup = Automatic
node.session.timeo.replacement_timeout = 30
```

Table E-1: Open-iSCSI Driver Settings

Variable name	Default value	Set value	Remarks
node.startup	No	Automatic	Automatically log on after the server reboots
node.session.timeo.replacement_ timeout	120	30	Shorten the failover time when using Multipath

4. Run the following command from the console to start the iSCSI service.

```
# service iscsi start
```

5. Run the following command from the console to confirm that the iSCSI service is operating.

```
# /etc/init.d/iscsi status
```

#### Set up CHAP Authentication

If CHAP authentication will not be used, this step is not necessary.



For description of CHAP authentication, refer to Appendix N: "CHAP Authentication".

Setup method when using CHAP authentication of Initiator.

- 1. Use vi or another editor to open the /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file on the server.
- 2. After editing the file as shown below, save and close the file.

```
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.username = <iqn (username) of server>
node.session.auth.password = <password of CHAP Initiator>
(Example)
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.username = iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft.exp120rj
node.session.auth.password = jR021_0085sserpxE
```

3. Restart the iSCSI service

```
# /etc/init.d/iscsi stop
# /etc/init.d/iscsi start
```



The CHAP Initiator password that is set here is a password that a target uses to authenticate the Initiator. This password is also required for settings on the disk array side (see Section: 13.2.21 iSMcfg setIdsetchap in the Storage Manager Command Reference), so be sure to write it down so it is not forgotten.

- Setup method when using bidirectional CHAP authentication.
  - 1. Use vi or another editor to open the /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file on the server.
  - 2. Edit the file as shown below, then save and close the file.

```
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.username = <iqn (username) of server>
node.session.auth.password = <password of CHAP Initiator>
node.session.auth.username_in= <iqn (username) of disk array>
node.session.auth.password_in = < password of CHAP target>
(Example)
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.username = iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft.exp120rj
node.session.auth.password = jR021_0085sserpxE
node.session.auth.username_in =
iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-m000-sn-
0000000938209213.wn-0.target0000 -p 192.168.10.64:3260
node.session.auth.password_in = i3DegarotsiCEN
```

#### 3. Restart the iSCSI service.

```
# /etc/init.d/iscsi stop
# /etc/init.d/iscsi start
```



The CHAP Initiator password that is set here is a password that a target uses to authenticate the Initiator. This password is also required for settings on the disk array side (see Section: 13.2.21 iSMcfg setIdsetchap in the Storage Manager Command Reference), so be sure to write it down so it is not forgotten.

#### **Execute Discovery**

Method when not using iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service) server

Use the iscsiadm command to search for the target.

```
# iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p <IP address of disk array>
(Example)# iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p 192.168.1.1:3260
```

- Method when using iSNS server
  - 1. Use vi or another editor to open the /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file on the server.
  - 2. Set the IP address and port number of the corresponding iSNS server.
  - 3. Restart iSCSI service.

```
# /etc/init.d/iscsi stop
# /etc/init.d/iscsi start
```

4. Get Initiator information from an application server registered to iSNS server.

See Appendix M: "Retrieve Initiator Information on Application Servers Registered with iSNS Server".



When using iSNS server, the Initiator name of the application server must be directly entered under the Initiator settings in the iSCSI Setup Tool.

# E.2 iSCSI Setup Tool

Run the iSCSI Setup Tool on an application server to configure the iSCSI settings required for the application server. Before starting the following section, you need to install the Storage Manager Agent Utility. See Section D.1: Installing Storage Manager Agent Utility for details on how to install the Storage Manager Agent Utility.

1. Run the following script on the application server.

```
# iSMiSCSISetup.sh
```

2. When a list of serial numbers is shown as follows, enter a list number corresponding to the serial number of the disk array unit you want to configure.

```
    1) 0000000991000001
    2) 0000000991000002
    3) 0000000991000003
    4) 0000000991000004
```

Please select serial number.

- 3. The following message appears to confirm whether to use CHAP authentication. Enter y to use the CHAP authentication. Enter n to skip the CHAP authentication.

```
To use CHAP authentication, please enter 'y'. [y/n]
```

4. When n is entered to skip the CHAP authentication, proceed to step (9). When y is entered to use the CHAP authentication, the following message appears. Enter the password of the CHAP initiator.

```
Please enter the target CHAP secret.
```

5. To confirm, enter the password of the CHAP initiator again.

```
Please enter password again.
```

6. This is to confirm whether to use mutual CHAP authentication. Enter y to use the mutual CHAP authentication. Enter n to skip the mutual CHAP authentication.

```
To use mutual CHAP authentication, please enter 'y'. [y/n]
```

 Proceed to step (9) when n is entered to skip the CHAP authentication. If y is entered to use the mutual CHAP authentication, the following message appears. Enter the password of the CHAP target.

```
Please enter the initiator secret.
```

8. To confirm, enter the password of the CHAP target again.

```
Please enter password again.
```

9. The IP addresses of the disk array are listed as follows. Enter a list number corresponding to the IP addresses of the disk array. iSCSI Setup Tool runs a ping command using the IP addresses that are set in the host connection port parameters. It does not show failed results and delete the failed ones from the search result of the target.

```
    Serial number=000000991000004, Controller=0, IP
address=172.168.1.101
    Serial number=000000991000004, Controller=0, IP
address=172.168.1.102
    Serial number=000000991000004, Controller=1, IP
address=172.168.2.101
    Serial number=000000991000004, Controller=1, IP
address=172.168.2.102
    Please select target IP address.
```

10.After the following message appears to confirm whether to create an LD set, enter y to proceed.

To create LD set, please enter 'y'. [y/n]

11.When the process is successfully complete, a list of the IP addresses appears as follows:

```
Succeed to log on to the target.
Serial number=XXXXXXXXXXXXX, Controller=X, IP
address=XXX.XXX.X.XXX
```

The above is an example. You will actually see the serial number, controller number and IP address of the target. You can specify a parameter file as shown below.

- # iSMiSCSISetup.sh [-f <parameter name> [-n]]
- When you specify -f parameter name>, a parameter is loaded from the file specified.
- When you specify -n, a dry run is performed to check for any parameter error, and does not process

The details of the parameter file are described as follows.

#### Details

```
-m <Serial number>
```

- -I <Password of CHAP initiator>
- -t <Password of CHAP target>
- -p <IP address of host connection port>

#### Descriptions

- In case CHAP authentication is not used, you do not need to supply a password of the CHAP initiator and a password of the CHAP target. When you use CHAP authentication, use the initiator name for the user name of CHAP initiator.
- In case mutual CHAP authentication is not used, you do not need to supply a password of CHAP target. When you use mutual CHAP authentication, use the target name for the user name of CHAP target.
- Lines, where any other letters than ones mentioned above is specified followed by a hyphen (-), are ignored and the operation continues.

For example: When CHAP authentication is not used.

- -m 000000991000004
- -p 172.168.1.101

For example: When Mutual CHAP authentication is used.

- -m 00000099100004
- -i jR0210085sserpxE
- -t i3DegrarotsiCEN
- -p 172.168.1.101



It is necessary to configure a public key with Storage Manager for SSH connection.

#### How to register

1. When you run the following command, it prompts for your parameter entry. Do not enter anything but press the **Enter** key.

```
ssh-keygen -t rsa
```

2. After you run the following command, it prompts for a user name and password entries. Enter sysadmin for the user name and the password of the sysadmin user.

ftp <IP addresses of management ports for Storage
Manager>

3. After you subsequently run the following commands, run the quit command to end the FTP.

cd .ssh

get authorized_keys

- 4. Run the following command.
  - cat ./.ssh/id_rsa.pub >> authorized_keys
- 5. When you run the following command, it prompts for a user name and password entries. Enter sysadminj for the user name and the password of the sysadmin user.

ftp < IP addresses of management ports for Storage
Manager>>



6. After you subsequently run the following commands, run the quit command to end the FTP.

cd .sshput authorized_keys

7. Run the following command.

ssh sysadmin@< IP addresses of management ports for
Storage Manager>>

8. When the following message appears, enter yes.

Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)?

- 9. Check it does not prompt for a password entry, and then run the exit command to end SSH.
  - Because the port number 2730 is used, you need to set the exception for the firewall.
  - iSCSI Initiator needs to be installed and the service must be started in advance.

If you use the CHAP authentication with two or more disk arrays, please follow the procedures shown as below.

#### Procedures

- 1. Configure the iSCSI setting using iSCSI Setup Tool.
- Execute the following command in the order as below. (If there are two or more IP addresses succeeded to log on, execute the iscsiadm command repeatedly to each IP address.)

```
service iscsi stop
iscsiadm -m node -o delete -p <target IP addresss
succeeded to log on in step 1.>
service iscsi start
```

- Select the IP address of another disk array by iSCSI Setup Tool, and configure the iSCSI setting.
- 4. Execute the following command. (If there are two ore more IP addresses succeeded to log on, use the first IP address specified in step 2.)

```
iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p <target IP
addresss succeeded to log on in step 1.>
```

5. Execute the following commands.

```
iscsiadm -m node --targetname <target name specified
in step /1/> -p <target IP addresss succeeded to log
on in step /1/> --op update -n
node.session.auth.authmethod -v CHAP
iscsiadm -m node --targetname <target name specified
in step /1/> -p <target IP addresss succeeded to log
on in step /1/> -p op update -n
node.session.auth.username -v <initiator name>
iscsiadm -m node --targetname <target name specified
in step /1/> -p <target IP addresss succeeded to log
on in step /1/> -p <target IP addresss succeeded to log
on in step /1/> -p <target IP addresss succeeded to log
on in step /1/> -p op update -n
node.session.auth.password -v <CHAP password for the
initiator>
```



6. If you use mutual CHAP authentication, execute the following commands.

iscsiadm -m node --targetname <target name specified in step 1.> -p <target IP address succeeded to log on in step 1.> --op update -n node.session.auth.username_in -v <target name specified in step 1.> iscsiadm -m node --targetname <target name specified in step 1.> -p <target IP address succeeded to log on in step 1.> --op update -n node.session.auth.password_in -v <CHAP password for the target>

#### 7. Execute the following command.

(If there are two or more IP addresses succeeded to log on, repeat the steps 5-7)

iscsiadm -m node --targetname <target name specified in step 1.> -p <target IP address succeeded to log on in the step 1.> -l

* If you use three or more disk arrays, repeat the procedures in steps 1-2 repeatedly, and then perform the procedure in step 3 for the last disk array unit. And then perform the procedure the steps 4–7 repeatedly for each disk arrays you have done the procedures in step 1-2.)

# E.3 Checking Connection from Application Server

Perform the following steps to connect the application server and disk array in Linux environment.



# E.3.1 Logon Steps in Linux Environment

#### 1. Search for target.

```
# iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p <IP address of disk array>
(Example)# iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p 192.168.10.64:3260
```

#### 2. Log on to target.

```
# iscsiadm -m node -T <iqn of disk array> -p <IP address of disk
array> -l
(Example)# iscsiadm -m node -T
iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-m000-sn0000000938209213.
wn-0.target0000 -p 192.168.10.64:3260 -l
```

## E.3.2 Confirmation steps in Linux Environment

Run the following command to check the number of logical disks (No. of logical disks assigned to application server × No. of access paths from application server to individual logical disks) and the respective vendor and model names (Bull SAS, DISK ARRAY).

```
# cat /proc/scsi/scsi
```



If nothing is shown, none of the access paths recognized the logical disks of the disk array unit assigned to the application server. Check the connection between the application server and the disk array unit, the Access Control settings, NIC driver settings and so on.

**Display example:** When two logical disks are assigned to a server, with two access paths per logical disk.



* In the environment where Multipath is installed, in some cases, depending on the Linux kernel version, the logical disks that can be controlled by Multipath are displayed after the logical disks recognized by the OS via the NIC (comprised in the above example of NIC#1 and NIC#2).

# Appendix F How to Set/Check Application Server (VMware) (iSCSI)

This appendix provides the steps you should follow while setting or checking an application server in the VMware environment, when the disk array is configured for the iSCSI connection.

# F.1 Initializing Application Server

Perform the following steps to initialize the application server in the VMware environment.



The following describes the steps for using software iSCSI Initiator in the ESX Server environment.



# **F.1.1 Preparation**

Perform the following steps to prepare for installation of application server in the VMware environment:

1. Provide IP addresses for an application server

Prepare IP addresses to be assigned to the application server as per the no. of NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR) ports. In addition, prepare the subnet mask and gateway addresses by asking the network administrator.

If two or more IP addresses are used by Multipath, the same network segment cannot be specified. Prepare IP addresses of other segments.

**Example 1:** Connectable configuration HP0:192.168.0.10

HP1:192.168.1.10

Example 2: Unconnectable configuration

HP0:192.168.0.10

HP1:192.168.0.11

2. Install NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR)

Install the NIC to the application server as described in the manuals provided with the NIC and application server.



3. Install the NIC (1000BASE-T or 10GBASE-SR) driver

Install and set up the driver according to the setup procedure in the manual provided with the NIC installed in the server, or by referencing information provided on the Web and so on.



If the driver has already been installed and set up for the NIC installed in the application server, this step is not necessary.

4. Specify the network settings

Select Start > Control Panel > Network Connection, and then open Local Area Connection **Properties** to specify the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

5. Connect to the disk array unit

Use a 10-Gbps or 1-Gbps cable to connect the application server to the host port (HP connector) of the disk array unit.
Unit equipped with NF53x1-xF21xx (unit with 10Gbps iSCSI 2port controllers) 10-Gbps cable

Connector shape: LC connector



Unit equipped with NF53x1-xF11xx (unit with 1Gbps iSCSI 2port controllers)
 1-Gbps cable

Connector shape: RJ-45 connector



For a sample connection configuration, see *Appendix K: "iSCSI Connection Configuration-Examples"*.

The following shows the positions of the host ports.







Figure F-2: Unit with NF53x1-xF11xx (1Gbps iSCSI 2port Controllers)

The following shows an example of a 10-Gbps iSCSI connection (redundant path configuration in combination with Multipath).

To implement the following recommended example, two NICs must be installed in the application server and two 10-Gbps cables are needed to connect the disk array unit and NICs.

Use a 10-Gbps cable to connect the NIC to the host port (HP connector) of the disk array unit. (The 10-Gbps cable has the same connector shape on both ends.)



## Figure F-3: Configuration Example

- 6. For the basic requirements when using iSCSI storage for ESX Server systems other than the above, refer to the OS Manual or to information provided on the Web and so on.
- 7. Prepare VMware Infrastructure Client (VI Client) operating environment

VI Client is a key component that generates, manages, and supervises virtual machines, virtual machine resources, and virtual machine hosts. VI Client must be installed on a Windows machine that supports network connection of ESX Server or VirtualCenter server environment.

# F.1.2 Creating VMKernel Port

The following operations must be performed before configuring iSCSI storage.

- Create a VMKernel port for iSCSI Software Initiator.
- Connect the service console to an iSCSI network (only when with ESX Server 3).

#### Create a VMKernel port for iSCSI Software Initiator

1. Log in to VI Client.

18.12 05.15 Web are Indea	anatyle these	1980	/			
inventary - Schedulad Tar		raine des	Rapo Considers	. /		
P Hasta & Guatera	vcy163-th3-bus	** B		/		
a 🛗 det a 📂 hostidder	Guting Stands Standary Portmanes Tasks & Events Manny Consider Portmanner Mach					1
10.17.210.59	General			Resources		-
a netšentik netšentik netšentik vejtoviho a vejtoviho a vejtoviho	Guest (25) CPU: Measury: Measury: Chorhead	Sume Linux Enter 2 yCPU 256 MB 105.00 MB	prise Server (32-bil)	CRU usage: Hest wenery usage: Guest memory usagei	279 NB6 254.00 MB 10400 MB	
	Winser Toole: IP Addresses: DNS Alexe : Stake:	out of data 10.17.95.209 wey 95-dhrp209 Powered On	eng.strevore.com	Locastore	Gil Device	70 PT60 25:10(20) 7
	Adice Tacks Commands					
	Paner off					
	Com Canad	e soller mat				
- T	Annatations					
	NOTE:	Type here to enter working	notes for the vetual			-
locent asks						×
Move 1	Farget	Statue	Initiated by T	Time Start Time	Complete 1	Rec .
E Appredict	0.17,216/9	Corpored	Administration	Actions a people	<1030.00	20.00137

Figure F-4: VMware Infrastructure Client Layout Screen

- 2. After selecting a server from the Inventory panel, click the **Network** button for the configuration. This opens the Hardware Configuration page.
- 3. Click Add network.
- 4. Select **VMKernel** in the **Connection Type** screen of the Add Network Wizard, and then click the **Next** button.

With ESX Server 3i, the **Service Console** option is not shown in the wizard screen.



Figure F-5: Add Network Wizard Screen (1)

 In the VMKernel – Network Access screen of the Add Network Wizard, select the vSwitch to be used or select Create Virtual Switch. Next, select the check box for the network type used by vSwitch, and then click the Next button.

Connection Type Network Access	Select which virtual switch will also preate a new virtual switch	handle the netwo	ork traffic for this connection. You may aimed network adapters listed below.
Connection Settings Summary	· Create a virtual switch	beek	Networks
Juning y	🗹 🗐 vinici	1000 Full	128.0.0.1-255.255.255.254
	C Use vSwitch0	Speed	Networks
	🗐 📰 vmnic0	1000 Full	0.0.0.1-255.255.255.254
	C Use vSwitch1	Speed	Networks
	🔲 📰 vmnk2	1000 Full	0.0.0.1-255.255.255.254
	C Use vSwitch2	Speed	Networks
	C Use vSwitch3	Speed	Networks
	C Use vSwitch4	speed	Networks
	Preview:		
	- Witernel Por Witernel 2	<u>e</u>	Physical Adapters

Figure F-6: Add Network Wizard Screen (2)

- Under Port Group Properties in the VMKernel: connection setup screen of the Add Network Wizard, select or type a network label and VLAN ID. For the IP setting, enter the IP address and subnet mask. After completing the settings, click the Next button.
  - Network Label: This name identifies the port group being created. When using this name to configure a VMKernel service such as Vmotion or IP storage, this label specifies the virtual adapter to connect to the port group.
  - VLAN ID: This identifies the VLAN used for the port group's network traffic. A VLAN ID is not required. Check with the network administrator to determine whether or not this must be set.

orrector Type March Access tomection Settings Jonary	Port Group Properties NetworkLabel VLAV ID (Optional):	VMernel 123 Use this port group for vMetion	
	IP Settings IP Address: Subnet Mask:	10 , 20 , 145 , 123	
	Prevent VMiceral Put Idvarnal 10-20.165.123	2 Prind Adaptes	

Figure F-7: Add Network Wizard Screen (3)

7. A warning alarm is output if a default gateway has not been set. Click the Yes button.

A gateway setting is required when connecting to a machine that is not set for the same IP subnet as the service console (ESX Server 3 only) or VMKernel.

Warning	×
1	There is no default gateway set. You may need to set a default gateway before you can use this network interface. Do you want to configure it now?
	Yes No

### Figure F-8: Warning Screen

8. Set the IP address of each gateway corresponding to the "routing" service consoles and VMkernel in the **DNS and Routing Configuration** screen. After completing the settings, click the **OK** button.

S Configuration Routing	
Default gateway: Default gateway: Gateway device:	10 , 20 , 165 , 1
Askemel Default gateway:	10 . 20 . 165 . 1

Figure F-9: DNS and Routing Configuration Screen

9. Click the **OK** button. Check the content of the **Settings Completed** screen. If there are no problems, click the **Finish** button.

## Connect the service console to an iSCSI network (only when with ESX Server 3)

After creating a VMKernel port for iSCSI Software Initiator, connect a service console with the same vSwitch as for the target VMKernel port.



This operation is not required when using ESX Server 3i.

- 1. After logging in to the VI Client, select a server from the Inventory panel. This opens the Hardware Configuration Page for this server.
- 2. Click the **Network** button for the configuration.
- 3. On the right side of the screen, click the **Properties** button for the vSwitch associated with the created VMKernel port.
- 4. Click the **Add** button for the port.
- 5. After selecting **Service console** in the **Connection Type** screen of the Add Network Wizard, click the **Next** button.



Figure F-10: Add Network Wizard Screen (4)

6. On the **Service Console: Connection Settings** screen of the Add Network Wizard, enter a Network label to identify the port group that was created under **Port Group Properties**.

Select either Automatically retrieve IP settings or Use the following IP setting.

If you selected **Use the following IP setting**, enter the IP address and subnet mask, then click the **Edit** button.



Figure F-11: Add Network Wizard Screen (5)

- 7. Enter the IP address of the default gateway for service control. When settings are completed, click the **Next** button.
- 8. In the **Settings Completed** screen of the Add Network Wizard, use the Preview function to check that vSwitch has been correctly configured, and then click the **Finish** button.

kdd Network Wizard		
Ready to Complete Please verify that al	Enew and wookled vertual switches are configured appropriately.	8072600
Connection Lisse	Host networking will include the following new and nodried volvetches: Previous	
Samory	Servite Console 2 11.020 046-122	
	VMiseral Dist	



# F.1.3 Setting up Software iSCSI Initiator

To configure Software iSCSI Initiator, activate Initiator and then set the target address for Initiator. This section describes the parameter settings related to CHAP authentication.

#### Activate Software iSCSI Initiator

Activate software iSCSI Initiator, so that ESX Server can be used.

- 1. After logging in to VI Client, select a server from the Inventory panel.
- 2. Click the **Storage Adapter** button under the hardware to be configured. (A list of available storage adapters is displayed.)
- 3. After selecting an available software Initiator from the iSCSI software adapter, click Properties.

Device		туре	Target ID
SCSI Softwar	e Adapter		
o vmhba32		ISCSI	ign.com
owerEdge Ex	pandable RAID Controller 4E/SI/DI		
o vmhba1		Parallel SCSI	
-			
P10000 2Gb	Fibre Channel Host Adapter		
P10000 2Gb vmhba0	Fibre Channel Host Adapter	Fibre Channel SCSI	1152921
ymhba0	Fibre Channel Host Adapter	Fibre Channel SCSI	1152921
P10000 2Gb withba0 etails	fibre Channel Host Adapter	Fibre Channel SCSI	1152921
etails	fibre Channel Host Adapter	Fbre Channel SCSI	1152921
etails wmhba32 Model:	ibre Channel Host Adapter	Fibre Channel SCSI	1152921 Proper
vmhba0 vmhba0 vmhba32 Model: ISCSI Name:	ibre Channel Host Adapter ISCSI Software Adapter ign.1998-01.com.vmware.vcy174-6aa898984	Fibre Channel SCSI IP Address: Discovery Methods:	1152921 Proper Send Targets

Figure F-13: Hardware Configuration Page Screen

4. Click the **Configure** button under the **General** tab in the iSCSI Initiator Properties screen.

SCSI Initiator (vmhba32) P	roperties	_10
eneral Dynamic Discovery S	tatic Discovery CHAP Authentication	
ISCSI Properties		
ISCSI name:	ign.1998-01.com.vmware:vcy174-6aa8989a	
iSCSI alias:	vcy174.eng.vmware.com	
Target discovery methods:	Send Targets	
Software Initiator Properties		
Status:	Enabled	

Figure F-14: General Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen

5. Select the **Enabled** check box under **Status** in the General Properties screen. After completing the settings, click the **OK** button.

Enabled	
ISCSI Propertie	s
iSCSI Name:	ign. 1998-01. com. vmware: vcy174-6aa8989a
ISCSI Alias:	vcy174.eng.vmware.com

Figure F-15: General Properties Screen

#### Set up detection address

1

Set the target detection address so that the software Initiator is able to designate access-enabled storage resources on the network.

1. Click the Add button under the Dynamic Discovery tab in the iSCSI Initiator Properties screen.

neral Dynamic Discovery	ate Decourse   Chill A directories	1
end Targets btain information about targe is SendTargets constrand	t devices directly from the following is	CST servers using
SCSI Server	Status	

# Figure F-16: Dynamic Discovery Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen

2. Enter the IP address of the server to be used as the target sending **iSCSI server**. After completing the settings, click the **OK** button.

Send Targets	
SCSI Server:	
Port	3260
Authentic can be es	ation may need to be configured before a sessio stablished with any discovered targets.

Figure F-17: Add Target Sending Server Screen

#### **CHAP Parameter Settings**

If CHAP authentication will not be used, this step is not necessary.

For description of CHAP authentication, refer to Appendix N: "CHAP Authentication".

1. Click the CHAP Authentication tab in the iSCSI Initiator Properties screen.

- The default CHAP parameters are shown under the **CHAP Authentication** tab.
- To change these CHAP parameters, click the **Configure** button.

iSCSI Initiator (vmł	iba32) Properties		-02
General   Dynamic Disc	overy Stabic Discovery	CHAP Authentication	
CHAP Authenticatio	m		
By default, use the fol	lowing credentials for all i	SCSI targets:	_
CHAP Name:	ign.1998-01.com.v	mware: vcy174 Config	uro

Figure F-18: CHAP Authentication Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen

2. Click the **CHAP Authentication** tab in the **iSCSI Initiator Properties** screen and change the following settings. After completing the settings, click the **OK** button.

#### Certificate

- Select the Use the following CHAP credentials option to activate CHAP authentication function.
- Select the Use Initiator Name option to use the Initiator name as the CHAP name. Enter any CHAP name to be used instead.
- Enter the CHAP Secret in the CHAP Secret box.
- Select **Disable CHAP authentication** to disable the CHAP authentication function.





<b>AUTION</b>	For sessions after CHAP setup, the CHAP Secret is used to authenticate the Initiator. This has no effect on any session that has already been established. When CHAP has been disabled, the current session continues until a restart or a forced log-out of the disk array unit is executed. After a restart or a forced log-out of the disk array unit, it is no longer possible to connect to any disk array that requires CHAP authentication.
<b>A</b> CAUTION	The CHAP Secret that is set here is a password that a target uses to authenticate the Initiator. This password is also required for settings on the dial ensure the Section 42.0 of 12 Matrix and 12 M
	disk array side (see Section: 13.2.21 iSMcfg set/dsetchap in the Storage Manager Command Reference), so be sure to write it down so it is not forgotten.

# F.2 Checking Connection from Application Server

Perform the following steps to connect the application server and disk array unit in a VMware environment.



# F.2.1 Executing Rescan

Perform the following steps:

- 1. Use VI Client to select a server, then select Storage Adapter as the configuration hardware setting.
- 2. Click Rescan under Storage Adapter.



Select an available software Initiator from displayed list of available iSCSI software adapters. This brings up a display of Initiator details such as the model name, IP address, iSCSI name, detection method, iSCSI alias, and various detected targets.

Device		Туро	Target ID
iSCSI Softwar	e Adapter		
vmhba32		iSCSI	ign.com
PowerEdge Ex	pandable RAID Controller 4E/SI/DI		
vmhba1		Parallel SCSI	
LP10000 2Gb	Fibre Channel Host Adapter		
Oeddmv 📀		Fibre Channel SCSI	1152921
Vinnba 32	seet column blocks	ID Address	Prop
Model:	ISCSI Software Adapter	IP Address:	Cond Toronto
ISCSI Alas:	ign.1996-01.com.vmware.vcy1/4-6aa6969a	Targets:	Denu Targets
DCJ: HID.	YCY174.6ig. Vilmare.com	Targets.	

Figure F-20: Hardware Configuration Screen (1)

3. Click **Properties** in **Details**.

corage noap	iers .		
Device		Туре	Target ID
SCSI Softwar	e Adapter		
vmhba32		iSCSI	ign.com
PowerEdge Ex	pandable RAID Controller 4E/SI/DI		
o vmhba1		Parallel SCSI	
LP10000 2Gb	Fibre Channel Host Adapter		
S vmhba0		Fibre Channel SCSI	1152921
wmhba32 Model:	ISCST Software Adapter	IP Address:	Prop
Model:	ISCSI Software Adapter	IP Address:	-
iSCSI Name:	ign.1998-01.com.vmware:vcy174-6aa8989a	Discovery Methods:	Send Targets
ISCSI Alias:	vcy174.eng.vmware.com	Targets:	0

Figure F-21: Hardware Configuration Screen (2)

4. Properties that can be added are shown under the **General** tab of the **iSCSI Initiator Properties** screen.

The software Initiator configuration and default properties can be changed.

neral Dynamic Discovery SI	tatic Discovery CHAP Authentication
SCSI Properties	
ISCSI name:	iqn.1998-01.com.vmware:vcy174-6aa8989a
iSCSI alias:	vcy174.eng.vmware.com
Target discovery methods:	Send Targets
Software Initiator Properties	
Status:	Enabled

Figure F-22: General Tab in iSCSI Initiator Properties Screen

# F.2.2 Setting up a Data Store

Create a data store for a software-activated iSCSI storage device. After creating it, execute a rescan. Disk/LUN from the ESX Server system can be used.

- 1. Use the VI Client to select a server, and then select **Hardware > Storage** under **Configuration**.
- 2. Click Add storage.
- 3. Select **Disk/LUN**, and then click the **Next** button.



Figure F-23: Add Storage Wizard Screen (1)

4. Select the iSCSI device to be used for the data store, and then click the Next button.

Device Location				SAN Identifier contains: •		0
CUPPER Dalk Layour	Device	Capacity	Arslable	SWITHEOLE	UUN	1
Properties	vnhba2.510	30.00 GB	10.00 GB	ign 2001-05.com.equillograf-Ba0	0	
Forwatting	vnhba2.0.0	30.00 GB	10.00 GB	ian 2001-05.com.equallogcis-8a0	0	
Ready to Complete	vnhba220	30.00 GP	13.00 GB	ion 2001-05.com.ecu.alogc:5-8x0		
	vnhba2.4.0	10.00 GM	13.00 GB	ion 2001-05.com.ecu.allogcos-840	0	
	vnhba21:0	30.00 GB		ion 2001-65.com.eou.e0ue0ogci5-840	0	
	CONTRACTOR OF	10.00.08	13.00 GB	100 2001-05 COV AN ARCHIOCOMME		
	vnhba321.0	10.00 GH		ion 2001-05.com.em.albracit-8a0	0	
	- Superior	10.00.08	10.00.05	top 2001-05 cont an allotted tob	-	_

# Figure F-24: Add Storage Wizard Screen (2)

5. **Current disk layout** is displayed. Check the current disk array layout. If there are no problems with the settings, click the **Next** button.

6. The Disk/LUN Properties are now shown. Enter the data store name.

After completing the settings, click the **Next** button.



The data store name is shown in the VI Client. The label must be unique within the current instance of the virtual Infrastructure.

7. Adjust the file system values and area to be used for data store. The default settings is to set the storage device for all empty areas. After completing the settings, click **Next**.

DiskAUN Device Location Current Disk Lavout Properties Formatting Ready to Complete	Maximum file size Large files require large block size; the minimum disk space use by any file is equal to the file system block size. These values a adjusted by VMP5-3 file systems on demand.	d
	Capacky	1

Figure F-25: Add Storage Wizard Screen (3)

8. When the **Completed Settings** screen appears, check the data store configuration. If there are no problems with the settings, click the **Finish** button.



Until now, a data store has been created in an iSCSI storage device that can be accessed by Software Initiator.

9. Click the Change button.

# F.2.3 Confirmation Using Guest OS

Perform the following steps to confirm that the logical disks are recognized by the guest operating system:

#### **Confirmation in Windows Environment**

- 1. Select Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Disk Manager to start.
- Click **Disk drives** and check the number of logical disks (No. of logical disks assigned to server × No. of access paths from server to individual logical disks) and the respective disk drive names (Bull DISK ARRAY SCSI Disk Device).



If nothing is shown, check the software iSCSI Initiator settings for the ESX Server environment, the server-Storage connections, NIC driver settings and so on.

3. Open **Disk Management** and check the number of logical disks (number of logical disks assigned to server).

## **Confirmation in Linux Environment**

Run the following command to check the number of logical disks (No. of logical disks assigned to application server × No. of access paths from application server to individual logical disks) and the respective vendor and model names (Bull, DISK ARRAY).

# cat /proc/scsi/scsi



If nothing is shown, check the software iSCSI Initiator settings for the ESX Server environment, the server-Storage connections, NIC driver settings and so on.

# Appendix G Installing StoreWay Multipath

This appendix provides the steps you should follow while installing the StoreWay Multipath (hereinafter referred to as Multipath) in a Windows or Linux application server.

# G.1 For Windows Application Server

Use the setup CD-ROM and follow the steps below to install Multipath in a Windows application server:

- 1. Turn off the power supply of the server first and then disconnect all connections between the server and the disk array unit. When SAN boot is enabled, the server should be connected to the disk array unit via a single connection.
- Power on the server and log in as a user having administrative authority (built-in-administrator for Windows Server 2008) for the server where Multipath will be installed. Insert the setup CD-ROM of Multipath in the CD/DVD drive of the server.
- 3. When the message shown below or a similar message appears, click **Yes**. If no message is shown, run "iSpmStarter.exe" located in the root directory of the setup CD-ROM of Multipath.



Figure G-1: Storage Multipath Environment Checker





- 4. The setup program for Multipath starts. Depending on the server status, either of the following two message is shown:
  - If you are installing Multipath on the server for the first time, the Welcome to the InstallSheild Wizard for Storage Multipath page is shown. Click Next to proceed to step (5).



Figure G-2: Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Welcome Page 1

If the same version of Multipath has already been installed, the maintenance page is shown. Click Cancel to finish the installation.



Figure G-3: Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Welcome Page 2

5. When the **Ready to Install the Program** page is shown, click **Install** to start the installation.

🙀 Storage PathManager - InstallShiel	d Wizard		×
Ready to Install the Program The wizard is ready to begin installation.			
Click Install to begin the installation.			
If you want to review or change any of exit the wizard.	your <mark>installation s</mark>	ettings, click Back.	Click Cancel to
InstaliShield			
	< Back	Install	Cancel

Figure G-4: Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Ready to Install the Program

6. When the **InstallShiled Wizard Completed** page is shown, click **Finish**.



## Figure G-5: Storage Multipath InstallShield Wizard - Completed

7. When the following message asking for restart is shown, click **Yes** to restart the server.

🚼 Storag	e PathManager Installe	er Information	×
	You must restart your sys changes made to Storage Click Yes to restart now o later.	tem for the configuration PathManager to take effect r No if you plan to restart	
	Yes	No	

Figure G-6: Storage Multipath Installer Information

8. When the server is restarted, connect the target disk array unit to the server. Multipath automatically recognizes target disk array unit and paths allowing you to start operation.

The installation of Multipath is now complete.

e.

# Appendix H Notes-Using Microsoft Cluster Service in Windows Server 2003 Environment

When you are using Microsoft Cluster Service (MSCS) in the Windows Server 2003 environment, the value set to each server by the MSCS specifications must match the disk array Target ID and LUN (number) values recognized by each server. Cluster setup does not work when different values are set.

For details, refer to the following URL:

[KB331801] Cluster setup may not work when you add nodes.

http://support.microsoft.com/kb/331801

# H.1 Target ID

The following describes a connection method related to setup of matching values as the Target IDs of disk array unit controllers recognized by the server.

When directly connecting server (HBA) and disk array unit

Set matching values to the Loop Switch ID of the disk array unit controller.

The Switch ID that is set becomes the Target ID recognized by the server.

Similarly, when there are multiple connection paths between servers and disk array units, set the same values to the Loop Switch IDs of all controller ports to be connected.



Figure H-1: Direct Connection

When connecting to FC switches, such as N8190-119 in Loop Topology Set identical Loop Switch ID values to controllers of the same disk array unit. The Switch ID that was set becomes the Target ID recognized by the server. When multiple disk array units are connected to FC switches, different Loop Switch ID values must

be set to each disk array unit. Normal operation will not occur if matching values are set.



Because FC switches in a Loop Topology require different Loop Switch IDs within FC switches, a configuration cannot be built using just one FC switch.



#### Figure H-2: Connecting to Loop Topology FC Switch

■ When connecting to a Fabric Switch, such as NF9340-xSxx, N8406-040/042

As shown in the figure below, for each Fabric Switch or each Zoning group, connections from servers and disk array units must be linked to the same port number on each switch.

Target IDs starting from 0 are assigned to targets that are recognized by the server starting from the lowest N_Port ID value (lowest port number of switch).



Figure H-3: Connecting to Fabric Switch

Switch No. Port No.	Connected Device	Switch ID	Target ID
Switch0 - Port0	iStorage0- Cont0	10h	0 A Recognizes targets
Switch0 - Port1	iStorage1- Cont0	12h	1 Connected to fabric switch in detected order and assigns
Switch0 - Port2	server A- HBA0	-	- Target ID from lower switch
Switch0 - Port3	server B- HBA0	-	_ port number. Target ID for
Switch1 - Port0	iStorage0- Cont1	11h	0 be 0. Secondly, detected
Switch1 - Port1	iStorage1- Cont1	13h	1 target will have "Target ID =
Switch1 - Port2	server A- HBA1	-	- 1 and so on.
Switch1 - Port3	server B- HBA1	-	-

# Table H-1: Connection of Switch

 $\leq$ 

If you connect wrong disk arrays to Ports of Switch0 and Switch1, you cannot perform cluster setup since Target IDs differ between controller 0 and controller 1.



Target IDs at CONT0 and CONT1 differ.

# H.2 Logical Unit Number

This section describes a method for setting matching values as the Logical Unit Number (LUN) of disk array units recognized from the server.

Each disk array unit includes an access control function that masks logical disks and maps LDNs starting from LUN0. If this access control is not being used, the logical disk number (LDN) of a logical disk configured in a disk array unit becomes the Logical Unit Number (LUN) that can be accessed from the server.

When access control is used, it becomes possible to change LUN (number) that can be accessed from the server.

For example, when LDN00 to 03 are in a disk array unit, access control can set LDN00 = LUN00, LDN01 = LUN01, LDN02 = LUN02 as recognized from Server A and LDN00 = LUN01, LDN01 = LUN02, LDN03 = LUN00 as recognized from Server B. In this case, there are different LDNs for the LUN that is recognized from Server A and the LDN that is recognized from Server B.

When access control is not used

No settings are necessary.

When access control is used

When you are setting access control, LDNs within a disk array unit must be set so that the same LUN (number) is recognized from each server.

# **Appendix I LED Inspection Checksheet**

If you cannot monitor status using Storage Manager, the LEDs in the unit can be used to check on LED status. If errors are detected, report the status indicated with an underline and the differing LED status to expedite the identification of the abnormality source and the arrangements for its repair. For more details, see *Section 1.2.3: "LED Display"*.

- When the LEDs blinks, write down the cycle or pattern (for example, lit 4 seconds and not lit 8 seconds) in parenthesis.
- When the LEDs, such as PS Status LED, are on in two colors, write down the colors in parenthesis.

# I.1 Disk Array Controller

	(1) UID LED (Blue)	On• Off • Blinking (	)
	(2) SERVICE LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(3) POWER LED (Green)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(4) STANDBY LED (White)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(5) CONT UID LED (Blue)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
CONT0	(6) CONT FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(7) CONT READY LED (Green)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(8-1) FAN0 FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(8-2) FAN1 FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(9) BBU FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
CONT1	(6) CONT FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(7) CONT READY LED (Green)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(8-1) FAN0 FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(8-2) FAN1 FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)
	(9) BBU FAULT LED (Amber)	On· Off · Blinking (	)

## Table I-1: Disk Array Controller - Front

CLUSTER0	(1) PS Status LED (Amber/Green)	On() · Off(	) · Blinking (	)
	(2-1) Maintenance Port LINK LED (Green)	On · Off · Blinking (	)	
	(2-2) Maintenance Port ACTIVE LED (Amber/Green)	On() · Off(	) · Blinking (	)
	(2-3) Management Port LINK LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ()$		
	(2-4) Management Port ACTIVE LED (Amber/Green)	On() · Off(	) · Blinking (	)
	(2-5) CONT UID LED (Blue)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(3-1) DPE READY LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(3-2) DPE FAULT LED (Amber)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(3-3) DPE#0 LINK LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(3-4) DPE#0 FAULT LED (Amber)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(3-5) DPE#1 LINK LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(3-6) DPE#1 FAULT LED (Amber)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(4-1) HPE READY LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(4-2) HPE ACCESS LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(4-3) HPE#0 LINK LED (Green)	On · Off · Blinking (	)	
	(4-4) HPE#0 ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Off · Blinking (	)	
	(4-5) HPE#1 LINK LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(4-6) HPE#1 ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Off · Blinking (	)	
	(4-7) HPE#2 LINK LED (Green)	On · Off · Blinking (	)	
	(4-8) HPE#2 ACCESS LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(4-9) HPE#3 LINK LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	
	(4-10) HPE#3 ACCESS LED (Green)	$On \cdot Off \cdot Blinking ($	)	

Table I-2:	Disk Array	/ Controller -	Back
------------	------------	----------------	------

CLUSTER1	(1) PS Status LED (Amber/Green)	On(	) · Off(	) · Blinking (	)
	(2-1) Maintenance Port LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f • Blinking (	)	
	(2-2) Maintenance Port ACTIVE LED (Amber/Green)	On(	) · Off(	) · Blinking (	)
	(2-3) Management Port LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking()		
	(2-4) Management Port ACTIVE LED (Amber/Green)	On(	) · Off(	) · Blinking (	)
	(2-5) CONT UID LED (Blue)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(3-1) DPE READY LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(3-2) DPE FAULT LED (Amber)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(3-3) DPE#0 LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f • Blinking (	)	
	(3-4) DPE#0 FAULT LED (Amber)	On · Of	f ∙ Blinking (	)	
	(3-5) DPE#1 LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(3-6) DPE#1 FAULT LED (Amber)	On · Of	f • Blinking (	)	
	(4-1) HPE READY LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-2) HPE ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-3) HPE#0 LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-4) HPE#0 ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-5) HPE#1 LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-6) HPE#1 ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-7) HPE#2 LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f ∙ Blinking (	)	
	(4-8) HPE#2 ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	
	(4-9) HPE#3 LINK LED (Green)	On · Of	f ∙ Blinking (	)	
	(4-10) HPE#3 ACCESS LED (Green)	On · Of	f · Blinking (	)	

# **Appendix J Notes-Using iSCSI Supported Disk Array Unit**

This appendix describes the notes in using and setting the disk array unit that supports iSCSI protocol (hereinafter called iSCSI supported disk array unit).

## 1. Notes on Setting

Host recognize volume is unnecessary for iSCSI supported disk array unit. However, if the host recognize volume is set, it does not affect the operation.

## 2. Notes on Using

a. Combination of following environment does not support ESMPRO/ServerAgent.

At this time, Storage monitoring function (ESMStorageService) does not work.

- Windows Server 2003 or Windows Server 2003 R2
- Microsoft Software Initiator is installed

When monitoring internal disks in the Bull Server by using Microsoft Software Initiator and Storage monitoring function (ESMStorageService), use Windows Server 2008 or later.

b. Available initiator name at Storage Manager is as follows.

Available character	character Single byte alphanumeric characters*, ':' (colon), '.' (period), and '-' (hyp	
	The character entered in uppercase will be registered as lowercase.	
Number of characters	223 characters	

Available number of characters of the initiator name used in Windows software initiator is as follows. (as of January, 2009)

Windows Server 2003	
(Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator 2.08)	Equal or less than 221 characters
Windows Server 2008 (included in OS)	

c. Following message may be written to syslog, when using Red Hat Enterprise Linux. This does not affect the operation.

```
iscsid: received iferror -22
iscsid: received iferror -38
```

- d. Following message may appear when performing discovery at each OS to detect the disk array unit. This does not affect the operation.
  - Windows Server 2003 (Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator 2.08)

```
Authorization Failure.
```

Windows Server 2008 (include in OS))

Authorization Failure.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.2 (iscsi-initiator-utils-6.2.0.868-0.7.el5)

iscsiadm: discovery login to xx.xx.xx rejected: initiator error (02/02), non-retryable, giving up

# Appendix K iSCSI Connection Configuration-Examples

This appendix provides examples of iSCSI connection configuration.

# K.1 Connection Between Application Server and LAN

iSCSI network supports only independent configuration of public LANs (intranet).

Shared-storage configurations are not supported (but are enabled when using a VLAN).



Figure K-1: Connection Between Application Server and LAN

# K.2 Connection Between Management Server and LAN

iSCSI networks and management networks can be interconnected in either separate or shared configurations.

However, note with caution that Bull Storage connections cannot be made using iHP0/1 (iSCSI port).

1. Direct Connection Configuration

Separate from application server (recommended)



Figure K-2: Connection Between Management Server and LAN - Direct Configuration
- 2. Switch Connection Configuration
- 1. Application server, Shared iSNS server configuration
- 2. Management network and Shared iSCSI network configuration





3. Non-Supported Connection Configurations (Storage Manager connection using iSCSI port)



Figure K-4: Connection Between Management Server and LAN - Non-Supported Configuration

# Appendix L Script for Reporting Information Registered with iSNS Server

If large volume of information on initiators and targets is registered with iSNS Server, information displayed by the isnscli ListAllNodesWithDetails command becomes large and makes identifying initiator names difficult. You can use a vbs script to quickly perform identification and to report only information required to identify initiator names.

#### Script name: isns.vbs

```
strComputer = "."
Set objWMIService = GetObject("winmgmts:\\" & strComputer & "\root\WMI")
Set colItems = objWMIService.ExecQuery( "SELECT * FROM
MSiSNSServerProvider_NodeClass",,48)
For Each objItem in colItems
If objItem.iSCSINodeType = 2 Then
Wscript.Echo "iSCSIName=" + objItem.iSCSIName
If objItem.iSCSINodeAlias <> "" Then
Wscript.Echo "iSCSINodeAlias=" + objItem.iSCSINodeAlias
Else
Wscript.Echo "iSCSINodeAlias=" + objItem.iSCSINodeAlias
Else
Wscript.Echo "iSCSINodeAlias=" End If
End If
```

Following is the sample output displayed when isns.vbs script is run.

```
C:\>cscript //Nologo isns.vbs
iSCSIName=iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:server1
iSCSINodeAlias=<MS SW iSCSI Initiator>
iSCSIName=iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:41139fb1987e
iSCSINodeAlias=server2
```

# Appendix M Retrieve Initiator Information on Application Servers Registered with iSNS Server

You can retrieve the initiator information on application servers registered with iSNS server and use it for configuring the iSCSI settings of the disk array.

Follow the steps below to retrieve the initiator information:

1. Run the command to show and save the initiator information registered with the iSNS server.

Run the CLI that belongs to the iSNS server from the command prompt on the server where the iSNS server works to show the initiator information registered with the iSNS server.

For details of the initiator information to be displayed, see *Example 1* and *Example 2*.

Copy the initiator name of the target application server from the displayed information and save it (in a text file or the like).

2. Transfer the saved initiator information.

Transfer the initiator information saved in a file by using a function such as file transfer to the PC where Storage Manager Client (Web GUI) is used.

3. Configure the iSCSI of the disk array.

#### Example 1

When the host name can be identified by initiator name (typically used when the application server is on Windows):

Run the isnscli ListNodes command from the command prompt to retrieve the initiator name of the target application server

Following information is displayed on initiators and targets registered with iSNS server:.



#### Example 2

If the host name cannot be identified by initiator name (typically used when the application server is on Linux):

Run the isnscli ListAllNodesWithDetails command from the command prompt to identify the target application server by using the alias information, and then retrieve the initiator name (*).

Following detailed information is displayed on initiators and targets registered with iSNS server:

```
C:\>isnscli ListAllNodesWithDetails
                                                    The initiator name
Nodes:
                                                    of the server2
ign.1994-05.com.redhat:41139fb1987e
      Entity Identifier: [server2]
      Entity Registration Period: 900
      ___
      Portal IP address: 172.16.11.101
      Portal port: 58367
      ESI Interval: 300
      ESI port: 54872
      ___
      iSCSI Name: [iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:41139fb1987e]
      iSCSI node type: Initiator
                                    The alias of the
      Alias: [server2] initiator
      PG iSCSI Name: [iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:41139fb1987e]
      PG Portal IP address: 172.16.11.101
      PG Portal port: 58367
      PGT: 1
iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-0000000010000032.wn-server1.ta
rget0000
      ___
      Entity Identifier:
[iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-0000000010000032]
      Entity Registration Period: 900
      Portal IP address: 172.168.1.111
      Portal port: 3260
```

```
___
      Portal IP address: 172.168.2.113
      Portal port: 3260
      ___
      iSCSI Name:
[iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-0000000010000032.
wn-server1.target0000]
      iSCSI node type: Target
      Alias: [wn-server1]
      ___
      PG iSCSI Name:
[iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-0000000010000032.
wn-server1.target0000]
      PG Portal IP address: 172.168.1.111
      PG Portal port: 3260
      PGT: 0
      ___
      PG iSCSI Name:
[iqn.2001-03.jp.nec:storage01:ist-3-10-sn-0000000010000032.
wn-server1.target0000]
      PG Portal IP address: 172.168.2.113
      PG Portal port: 3260
      PGT: 0
MSiSNSControlNode:00000738
      ___
      Entity Identifier: [isns:0000003]
      Entity Registration Period: 900
      ___
      iSCSI Name: [MSiSNSControlNode:00000738]
      iSCSI node type: Control
Success
```



When large volume of information on initiators and targets is registered with iSNS Server, you can use a script to quickly perform identification of the initiator name of the target application server.

For details, see Appendix L, "Script for Reporting Information Registered with iSNS Server".

# **Appendix N CHAP Authentication**

Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) is an authentication method. This appendix describes the CHAP authentication and its settings.

### N.1 General

A random text string called a "challenge" is sent from the server to the client, and the client uses it as the basis for encrypting its own "Secret" (password), which it returns. Because the server has the client's Secret (password), it performs the same encryption and compares the result to the encrypted code returned from the client to enable authentication of users.

### **N.2 Constraints on Secrets**

- Although this device enables use of 12- to 32-character string lengths, typically Initiator restricts the CHAP Secrets to 16-character (128-bit) strings. (As of February 2009)
- Do not set the same values to the Initiator CHAP Secret and the target CHAP Secret that are used for bidirectional CHAP authentication.

### N.3 Description of Operation Modes

1. CHAP authentication for Initiator

Only authentication of the application server (Initiator) from the disk array unit (iSCSI target) is performed.

Only target CHAP Secret is set.

2. Bidirectional CHAP authentication

Authentication is performed mutually for the disk array unit (iSCSI target) and the application server (Initiator). Both a target CHAP Secret and an Initiator CHAP Secret are set.



Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator refers to this as "Mutual CHAP".

### N.4 CHAP Username Setting

- 1. Set the target name (when it can be set) as the CHAP username (target side).
- Unless otherwise specified, set the Initiator name as the CHAP username (Initiator side). (If using another name, maximum length is 256 characters.)

### N.5 Correspondence between Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator Secret Setting and iSMCLI

1. CHAP authentication for Initiator

<Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator> iSCSI Initiator Properties "target"

- $\rightarrow$  Log on
- $\rightarrow$  Log on to target
- $\rightarrow$  Advanced Settings (General tab) screen

1 1 000	
Connect by usin	16
Local <u>a</u> dapter:	Microsoft iSCSI Initiator
Source IP:	192.168.10.10
Target Portal:	192.168.10.64 / 3260
opo / Oheekeu	
a contract of the second se	m
Data digest	information
Data digest OHAP logon OHAP helps ensitarget and an initiator.	Information Information Sure data security by providing authentication between a Itiator trying to establish a connection. To use it specify I CHAP secret that was configured on the target for this
Data digest Data digest CHAP logon OHAP helps ens target and an ini the same target initiator. User name:	In formation In formation sure data security by providing authentication between a litistor trying to establish a connection. To use it specify I CHAP secret that was configured on the target for this [ign.1991-05.com.microsoft.120rj-2
Deta digest Deta digest OHAP logon OHAP helps ens target and an ini the same target initiator. User name: Target secret:	Header digest information sure data security by providing authentication between a litator trying to establish a connection. To use it specify to CHAP secret that was configured on the target for this [ign.1991-05.com.microsoft:120rj-2 [************
Data digest Data digest CHAP logon OHAP helps ens target and an ini- the same target initiator. User name: Target georet Perform mu	<u>H</u> eader digest     information     sure data security by providing authentication between a     titator trying to establish a connection. To use it specify     tOHAP secret that was configured on the target for this     [iqn.1991=05.com.microsoft:120rj=2     [*********************************

Figure N-1: iSCSI Initiator Authentication Setting (General Tab) Screen

#### iSMCLI

```
iSMcfg setldsetchap -ldsetname ldset name -initiatorpwd CHAP Secret for Initiator
```

Bidirectional CHAP authentication (mutual CHAP authentication)
 <Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator> iSCSI Initiator Properties (General tab) screen



Figure N-2: iSCSI Initiator (General Tab) Screen

Click Secret to view the iSCSI Initiator window.

Type a CHAP secure CHAP	secret to be use secrets are not i	d to authentical words and phras	te (verify) targets. The mo ses, but a random sequent in the target so that the	ce
initiator can o	connect.	CINF SCIELD	in the target so that the	
CHAP secret:				
CHAP secret:				

Figure N-3: iSCSI Initiator CHAP Secret Input Window

### iSMCLI

```
iSMcfg setldsetchap -ldsetname ldset name -initiatorpwd CHAP Secret for
Initiator -targetpwd bidirectional CHAP Secret
```

### Glossary

## Α

#### AccessControl

A program product ensuring security for a disk array, which is shared among multiple servers. It determines if access to logical disks in the disk array is permitted from the application server.

#### ActiveX controls

ActiveX controls are software modules based on Microsoft's Component Object Model (COM) architecture. An ActiveX control can be reused by many application programs within a computer or among computers in a network. The ActiveX controls are comparable with Java applets.

#### Ambient temperature

Air temperature of the environment where the hardware equipment is kept. Maintaining an appropriate ambient temperature is important for the proper functioning and longevity of equipment.

#### Antistatic bags

See Antistatic device.

#### Antistatic device

Any item like antistatic mat and antistatic bags is used to reduce static electricity charges on a person's body or equipment. These are used for safety purpose like preventing fire when working with flammable gases or liquids, or to prevent damage to static sensitive objects like electronic components.

#### Antistatic gloves

See Antistatic device.

#### Antistatic mat

See Antistatic device.

#### Antistatic shoes

See Antistatic device.

#### **Application server**

A server that runs business applications using storage area on a storage system, which is connected to the server through FC and/or iSCSI.

#### В

#### Battery backup retention time

The time for which the battery backup can keep the system functional in case of power supply failure.

#### **Battery Backup Unit**

A Battery Backup Unit (BBU) provides reserve power in case of main power failure to ensure data integrity.

#### BBU

See Battery Backup Unit.

#### С

#### Cache

Cache is a high speed memory component implemented at the controller level that temporarily holds data so that any subsequent access to that data is faster. If requested data is contained in the cache, this request can be served by simply reading the cache, which is faster. Otherwise, the data has to be recomputed or fetched from its original storage location, which is comparatively slower.

#### **Cache Fast Write**

Cache Fast Write is a feature that allows data to be held only in cache instead of being written to disk unless necessary. This improves the data I/O performance.

#### **Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol**

Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) is a three-way authentication protocol defined in RFC 1994. During initiator CHAP authentication, the initiator is authenticated from an iSCSI target (disk array side). In mutual CHAP authentication, the iSCSI target (disk array side) and the initiator (application server side) perform the authentication mutually.

#### CHAP

See Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.

#### **CHAP** secret

CHAP secret is a password which is used during CHAP authentication.

#### Cross cable

This cable is used to directly connect two identical devices to each other without the use of a hub or a switch.

### D

#### Data replication

See Replication.

#### DE

See Disk Enclosure.

#### Disk array

A device that treats multiple disks as one large capacity disk. RAID technology is employed for improving reliability and processing capability.

#### Disk Array Controller

The Disk Array Controller contains control system components and control disk enclosure(s) where multiple physical disks are installed.

#### **Disk Enclosure**

A unit that contains multiple physical disks.

#### **Dummy carrier**

An exclusive tray used for an uninstalled hard disk drive. A dummy carrier fills the slot for hard disk drives.

#### Duplex

Duplex settings specify whether or not two devices can communicate in both directions simultaneously. Duplex mode can be half duplex or full duplex. Half duplex allows communication in both directions, but only one direction at a time. Full duplex allows communication in both directions simultaneously.

### F

# FC

See Fibre channel.

#### FC Switch

See Fibre Channel Switch.

#### Fibre channel

The Fibre Channel standard defines a high-speed data transfer interface that is primarily used in SANs.

#### **Fibre Channel Switch**

It is a network switch compatible with Fibre Channel protocol.

#### Firewall

Component of a computer system or a network that is designed to block unauthorized access while permitting authorized communications.

#### Full duplex

See *Duplex*.

### G

#### **Gateway address**

Indicates an address of the device such as router, which serves as an access point to a network.

### Н

#### Half duplex

See Duplex.

#### HBA

See Host Bus Adapter.

#### Host Bus Adapter

Host Bus Adapter (HBA) is the Fibre Channel (FC) interface card which connects a host server to a SAN (Storage Area Network). It offers input/output (I/O) operations and physical connectivity between the server and the storage device.

#### Host connection port

A port at the disk array controller, which is used to connect to application server.

#### Host information file

This file stores the host (application server) related information like host name, OS identification information, and Host Bus Adapter (HBA) information.

#### Hub

A common connection point for devices in a network to form a single network segment. The hub allows each device to talk to the other devices.

### L

#### Initiator

#### See iSCSI initiator.

#### Internet Small Computer System Interface

A network storage protocol, which enables the transfer of SCSI commands between machines over TCP/IP networks.

#### Internet Storage Name Service

A protocol that allows automatic discovery, management, and configuration of iSCSI and FC devices on a TCP/IP network.

#### **IPSec tunnel mode**

IPsec is a suite of protocols for securing network connections. IPSec tunnel mode is useful for protecting traffic between different networks where traffic passes through an intermediate, untrusted network.

#### iqn

See iSCSI Qualified Name.

#### iSCSI

See Internet Small Computer System Interface.

#### **iSCSI** initiator

This serves as an iSCSI client and sends SCSI commands over an IP network to request services from device (such as a disk array), known as targets.

#### iSCSI Qualified Name

Each iSCSI initiator and iSCSI target are given a unique iSCSI name known as iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN), that conforms to the format specified in RFC 3720. Apart from IQN, other type of addressing like Extended Unique Identifier (EUI) is also used.

#### iSCSI target

iSCSI target is a device (such as a disk array) to which the initiator sends data. iSCSI targets accept sessions from the initiator, and receive and execute SCSI commands.

#### iSNS

See Internet Storage Name Service.

### J

#### Java Runtime Environment

A software component that is required to be installed on a computer system to be able to run Java applets and applications.

#### JRE

See Java Runtime Environment.

### L

#### LED

See Light Emitting Diode.

#### **Light Emitting Diode**

Light Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor light source used in devices to provide visual indications of hardware status or malfunctions.

#### Logical disk

A software technology, which recognizes a virtual disk (area) as an independent disk in a computer system. Logical disk(s) are created from the pool using Storage Manager. Also, see *Pool*.

### Μ

#### **Management server**

A server that runs the Storage Manager Suite for centralized configuration and management of multiple disk arrays, including the old D/S series, connected through a LAN.

#### **Maximum Transmission Unit**

A Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) is the largest size packet, specified in bytes, that can be sent over a network.

#### MTU

See Maximum Transmission Unit.

#### **Mutual CHAP authentication**

See Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.

#### Ρ

#### Multipath

A software that allows multi-path connection between a application server and a disk array unit. This is useful for path failover when a failure occurred on a path and load balancing using multiple paths.

#### PD

See Physical Disk.

#### **Persistent Target**

iSCSI targets to which the iSCSI initiator reconnects whenever the computer is rebooted so that the initiator always appear to be connected to the target.

#### **Physical Disk**

A disk, which provides storage capacity and exists as a physical entity. It can be of different type such as SAS, SATA, and SSD.

#### Pool

A virtual medium in which multiple physical disks configured using the RAID technology, are regarded as one large disk. The pool is created using the Storage Manager.

#### Port

A physical connection point on devices such as computers, switches, and disk arrays, which is used to connect to other devices on a network.

#### Port Number

Port Number is a part of the internet addressing information used to identify the specific process to which the network data is to be delivered.

#### **Proxy exception**

Proxy exceptions allows you to specify domain names and/or IP address ranges, which are to be accessed directly bypassing the proxy server.

#### **Proxy server**

A server that acts as an intermediary between a client and the other servers in order to achieve network security, administrative control, caching, filtering, and anonymity. A client connects to the proxy server, requesting some service available from a different server. The proxy server evaluates the request according to its filtering rules.

### R

#### RAID

#### See Redundant Array of Independent Disks.

#### **Redundant Array of Independent Disks**

A storage technology that provides increased data performance and reliability through data redundancy and striping, combining multiple disk drives components into a single logical unit.

#### Replicate

When Replicate is performed, data copy from Master Volume (MV) to Replica Volume (RV) starts, to reflect the content of the MV into the RV. Updates made in the MV after Replicate is performed are also reflected into the RV.

#### Replication

Replication is a technique that copies the exact same data from a Master to a Replica. Since the Master and the Replica are completely independent, data reliability is high.

#### Restore

When Restore is performed, data copy from Replica Volume (RV) to Master Volume (MV) starts to reflect the data stored in the RV at the start of Restore into the MV. When Restore (update) is performed, updates made in MV after Restore are reflected in RV.

#### **Revolutions Per Minute**

It measures the number of times a disk revolve in a minute. It determines the speed of data access on the disk drive. The higher RPM value specifies the higher data access speed.

#### rpm

See Revolutions Per Minute.

### S

### SAN

See Storage Area Network.

SAS

See Serial Attached SCSI.

#### SD memory card

See Secure Digital card.

#### Secret

See CHAP secret.

#### Secure Digital card

Secure Digital (SD) card is a compact non volatile memory card used for storing data.

#### Separate

When Separate is performed, the difference between Master Volume (MV) and Replica Volume (RV) at the start of Separate is reflected into the RV to separate it. Updates made in MV after Separate is performed are not reflected in RV.

#### Serial Attached SCSI

A high speed data transfer technology using SCSI which employs serial data transfer to and from storage devices like hard disk drives.

#### Simple Network Management Protocol

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is used to manage devices on the network. This protocol defines how communication occurs between SNMP-capable devices and defines the SNMP message types. SNMP facilitates network administrators to manage network performance, solve network problems, and plan for network growth.

#### Snapshot

Snapshot is a technique that copies only difference data from a Master to a Replica. Compared to a full copy, a Replica can be created using little capacity, so storage can be operated efficiently.

#### SNMP

See Simple Network Management Protocol.

#### Solid State Drive

A data storage device, which uses non-volatile memory chips to store persistent data. They are characterized by not having any moving parts and hence are more resistent to physical shocks, quieter, and have lower access time and latency.

#### Spare

Unused physical disks in a pool that can be used to replace a failed disk. In case of failure, the data can be restored on a spare.

#### SSD

#### See Solid State Drive.

#### Storage Area Network

A storage architecture that connects storage devices such as disk arrays and servers across the network for enhanced reliability, scalability, and performance.

#### Straight cable

This cable is used to connect different types of devices. A straight cable can be used to connect the computer to a hub or a switch.

#### Subnet mask

Subnet mask determines the subnetwork an IP address belong to. A subnet mask allows to identify which part of an IP address is reserved for the network, and which part is available for host use.

#### Т

#### ТСР

#### See Transmission Control Protocol.

#### **Transmission Control Protocol**

Communication protocol that enables two hosts to connect to one another and exchange streams of data. This protocol ensures that the data is transferred and guarantees that the data is received in the same sequence in which it was sent.

### U

#### UDP

#### See User Datagram Protocol.

#### **User Datagram Protocol**

A data transmission protocol used to transfer messages (datagram) between hosts without providing any ordering or sequencing capability as in TCP.

### V

#### Virtual LAN

A group of devices that behave as if they are connected to the same network segment regardless of their physical location.

#### VLAN

See Virtual LAN.

### W

#### World Wide Name

World Wide Name (WWN) is a unique identifier assigned to a Host Bus Adapter (HBA) in the Fibre Channel network. WWN is an 8 byte number and its format is defined by IEEE OUI and vendor supplied information.

#### World Wide Port Name

World Wide Port Name is a World Wide Name (WWN) assigned to the Fibre Channel (FC) port. It is equivalent to the MAC address in Ethernet protocol and is a unique identifier in the network.

#### WWN

See World Wide Name.

# Index

# A

AC Operating Mode 34, 35 AC Power Off Sequence 38 AC Power Supply 66 Accessories 48 Acronyms and Abbreviations xix, xxi, xxvi Active/Fault LED 30 Adapter 20 Adapter (ADP) 32 Adding Application Servers 204 Assigning a logical disk to application server FC 108, 142 iSCSI 148, 180 Auto Cache Flush Function 41

# B

Battery xxxi, 199 Insert a new battery 199 Remove the battery 199 **BBU 199** Before Starting Storage Manager Client 73 Bind Hot Spare FC 108, 128 iSCSI 148, 171 Bind Logical Disk FC 108, 132 iSCSI 148, 175 Bind Pool FC 108, 123 iSCSI 148, 166 Binding Additional Logical Disks FC 203 iSCSI 206

# С

Changes to the Configuration 201 CHAP Authentication 281, 309, 310, 321, 332, 367 CHAP Parameter Settings 332 Check connection from application server FC 108, 146 Linux 300 Windows 253 iSCSI 148 Linux 317 VMware 335 Windows 279 Check Multipath Settings and Status 292, 301 **Collect Host Information** Automatically 109 Using host information collection command 110 Configuring IP Addresses 89 Connect **Application Server 63** Cables 62 Disk Array Unit 62, 90 LAN Cables 64 Port Connection 63 Power Supply Cables 65 Control Systems 37 Controller xxi, xxviii, 16 Installing a Controller 193 Removing a Controller 193 Customer Support 239

# D

Data replication function 40 DIP Switch 202 Modify Settings 202 Direct Connection Configuration 358 Disk Array Controller xxvi Power 31 Disk Array Controller (DAC) xxi Disk Array Enclosure Adapter 32 Disk Array Unit 51 Components 3 Controller (CONT) 16

Front View 3 **Initialization 45** Disk capacity 71 Disk Drive xxi, 29, 60, 193 2.5-inch 16, 60 3.5-inch 16, 60 Features 189 Front View 17 Installing a disk drive 57 Removing a disk drive 193 Disk Enclosure xxxiii, 16, 29, 63 Adapter 20 Front view 16 Mounting Disk Enclosure on a Rack 57 Power Supply 19 Rear view 18 Disk Port Status 32 DP0 195 **DP0-IN 195** DP0-OUT 195 Dummy carrier xxi, 17, 59 DynamicDataReplication 40

### Ε

Ear Bezels or Front Bezel Clips 55 Electrostatic 190 ESMPRO/AC 37 Example iSCSI Connection Configuration 357 LAN Cable Connection 64 Recommended Configuration 69

### F

FC Cable Length 62 Flow from Installation to Operation 43 Front Bezel 16, 191 Inserting a front bezel 191 Removing a front bezel 192

### Η

Host bus adapter (HBA) xxi, 216, 347, 349 Host Information 110, 225, 249, 295 Hot Spare Bind FC 128 iSCSI 171

**ID LED 29** Initializing Application Server FC 49 iSCSI 259, 303, 321 Initializing FC Disk Array 107 Assigning Logical Disks 142 Binding a Hot Spare 128 Binding a Pool 123 **Binding Logical Disks 132** Checking Connection from Application Server 146 Collecting Host Information 109 Initializing Wizard 111 **Registering Host Information 137** Initializing iSCSI Disk Array 147 Assigning Logical Disks 180 Binding a Hot Spare 171 Binding a Pool 166 Binding Logical Disks 175 Host Connection Port Parameters 159 Initializing Wizard 149 iSCSI Setup Tool 164 Inner Rail 54 Installation Disk Drives 57 iSCSI Software Initiator 262, 307 Network Setting Tool 81 **Optional Parts 185** Storage Manager Agent Utility 101, 245, 293 StoreWay Multipath 267, 308, 341 iSCSI Cable Length 62 iSCSI Setup Tool 276 iSMCLI 369

# J

Java Runtime Environment 71 JRE 71

# L

LAN Cables 48, 64 LED Display 21, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29 LED Inspection Checksheet Disk Array Unit 351 Life Span of Parts 239 List display-Hot Spare Bind FC 129 iSCSI 171 Lithium batteries xxxv Logical Disk Bind FC 132 iSCSI 175 Logical Unit Number 350

# Μ

Maintenance Port 20 Management Port 64 Management Server 68, 358, 359 Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) 160 Modify Configuration FC 203 iSCSI 206 Mounting a Disk Drive 60 MPIO function 267

# Ν

Nearline SAS HDD 189 Network Interface Card (NIC) xxi, 62, 260, 304, 322 Network Setting Tool 81, 89, 217 Next generation Java plug-in 79 Notes MSCS in Windows Server 2003 347 NTP server 115, 155

# 0

Operating System 72 Operation management 2 Optima3600 Series Optional Parts 186 Optional Parts 186, 188 Installation and Removal 191

### Ρ

Physical Disk (PD) xxii Pool Bind FC 108, 123 iSCSI 148, 166 Port Connection FC 63 iSCSI 64 Power control systems 37 Power LED 29, 39, 41 Power Supply AC Power Supply xxviii DC Power Supply xxviii, xxxiv Power supply xxii, 19 Power Supply Cables 65 Powering Off the Disk Array System 39 Powering On the Disk Array System 34

# R

Rack 195 Rack Mount Kit 51 RAID 123 Rail 52 Attaching to Front Pole 53 Attaching to Rear Pole 52, 53 RemoteDataReplication 40 Removing a dummy carrier 59

# S

SAS Cable 195, 196 SAS HDD 189 Script isns.vbs 361 Service LED 29, 36 Set host connection port parameters (iSCSI) 159 Set iSNS Server 161 Set Time Zone Linux 99

Windows 94 Set/Check Application Server FC 245, 293 iSCSI 259, 303, 321 Snapshot function 37 Software Installation and Configuration 44 SSD 189 Standby LED 30 Start Storage Manager Client 102 Status Display LED 20, 32 Storage Manager 2, 44, 64, 67, 68 Storage Manager Agent Utility 101 Storage Manager Client Operating Environment 70, 72 Storage Manager Express 2, 68 Storage Manager Suite 2, 68 StoreWay Multipath 49, 232, 234, 267, 308, 341 Windows 341 Switch Connection Configuration 359

### Τ

Target ID 347 Transfer host information file 249, 295 Troubleshooting Device Conditions 210 IP Setting Tool Errors 217 iSCSI Setup Tool Errors 226 Storage Manager Errors 218 StoreWay Multipath (Linux) Errors 234 StoreWay Multipath (Windows) Errors 232

# U

Unlock License FC 116 iSCSI 157 UPS 37 User Datagram Protocol (UDP) 89, 217 User Support 239

# V

View display-Hot Spare Bind FC 129 iSCSI 172 VMKernel Port 325 Volume 40, 41, 169, 223, 355

# W

Warning labels xxv Web browser 44, 71, 73, 102 Web GUI 44, 73, 77, 102 Windows xvii, 70, 73, 81, 94, 101, 109, 245, 259, 341, 347 Workflow 43 WWN 49 WWPN 49

REFERENCE 86 A1 33FH 01

BULL CEDOC 357 AVENUE PATTON B.P.20845 49008 ANGERS CEDEX 01 FRANCE